

FireBrick FB2700

User Manual



 *FB2700 Versatile Network Appliance*

FireBrick FB2700 User Manual

This User Manual documents Software version V1.25.003
Copyright © 2012-2013 FireBrick Ltd.

Table of Contents

Preface	xviii
1. Introduction	1
1.1. The FB2700	1
1.1.1. Where do I start?	1
1.1.2. What can it do?	1
1.1.3. Ethernet port capabilities	2
1.1.4. Differences between the devices in the FB2x00 series	2
1.1.5. Software features	2
1.1.6. Migration from previous FireBrick models	2
1.2. About this Manual	3
1.2.1. Version	3
1.2.2. Intended audience	3
1.2.3. Technical details	3
1.2.4. Document style	3
1.2.5. Document conventions	4
1.2.6. Comments and feedback	4
1.3. Additional Resources	4
1.3.1. Technical Support	4
1.3.2. IRC Channel	5
1.3.3. Application Notes	5
1.3.4. White Papers	5
1.3.5. Training Courses	5
2. Getting Started	6
2.1. IP addressing	6
2.2. Accessing the web-based user interface	6
2.2.1. Add a new user	7
3. Configuration	10
3.1. The Object Hierarchy	10
3.2. The Object Model	10
3.2.1. Formal definition of the object model	11
3.2.2. Common attributes	11
3.3. Configuration Methods	11
3.4. Web User Interface Overview	11
3.4.1. User Interface layout	12
3.4.1.1. Customising the layout	12
3.4.2. Config pages and the object hierarchy	13
3.4.2.1. Configuration categories	13
3.4.2.2. Object settings	14
3.4.3. Navigating around the User Interface	15
3.4.4. Backing up / restoring the configuration	16
3.5. Configuration using XML	16
3.5.1. Introduction to XML	16
3.5.2. The root element - <config>	18
3.5.3. Viewing or editing XML	18
3.5.4. Example XML configuration	18
3.6. Downloading/Uploading the configuration	20
3.6.1. Download	20
3.6.2. Upload	20
4. System Administration	21
4.1. User Management	21
4.1.1. Login level	22
4.1.2. Configuration access level	22
4.1.3. Login idle timeout	22
4.1.4. Restricting user logins	22

4.1.4.1. Restrict by IP address	22
4.1.4.2. Restrict by profile	23
4.2. General System settings	23
4.2.1. System name (hostname)	23
4.2.2. Administrative details	23
4.2.3. System-level event logging control	23
4.2.4. Home page web links	23
4.3. Software Upgrades	24
4.3.1. Software release types	24
4.3.1.1. Breakpoint releases	24
4.3.2. Identifying current software version	25
4.3.3. Internet-based upgrade process	25
4.3.3.1. Manually initiating upgrades	25
4.3.3.2. Controlling automatic software updates	26
4.3.4. Manual upgrade	26
4.4. Boot Process	27
4.4.1. LED indications	27
4.4.1.1. Power LED status indications	27
4.4.1.2. Port LEDs	27
5. Event Logging	28
5.1. Overview	28
5.1.1. Log targets	28
5.1.1.1. Logging to Flash memory	28
5.1.1.2. Logging to the Console	29
5.2. Enabling logging	29
5.3. Logging to external destinations	29
5.3.1. Syslog	29
5.3.2. Email	30
5.3.2.1. E-mail process logging	31
5.4. Factory reset configuration log targets	31
5.5. Performance	31
5.6. Viewing logs	31
5.6.1. Viewing logs in the User Interface	31
5.6.2. Viewing logs in the CLI environment	32
5.7. System-event logging	32
5.8. Using Profiles	32
6. Interfaces and Subnets	33
6.1. Relationship between Interfaces and Physical Ports	33
6.1.1. Port groups	33
6.1.2. Interfaces	33
6.2. Defining port groups	34
6.3. Defining an interface	35
6.3.1. Defining subnets	35
6.3.1.1. Using DHCP to configure a subnet	36
6.3.2. Setting up DHCP server parameters	36
6.3.2.1. Fixed/Static DHCP allocations	37
6.3.2.2. Partial-MAC-address based allocations	37
6.4. Physical port settings	38
6.4.1. Disabling auto-negotiation	38
6.4.2. Setting port speed	38
6.4.3. Setting duplex mode	38
6.4.4. Defining port LED functions	39
7. Session Handling	41
7.1. Routing vs. Firewalling	41
7.2. Session Tracking	41
7.2.1. Session termination	42

7.3. Session Rules	42
7.3.1. Overview	42
7.3.2. Processing flow	43
7.3.3. Defining Rule-Sets and Rules	46
7.3.3.1. Recommended method of implementing firewalling	46
7.3.3.2. Changes to session traffic	48
7.3.3.3. Graphing and traffic shaping	48
7.3.3.4. Configuring session time-outs	49
8. Routing	50
8.1. Routing logic	50
8.2. Routing targets	51
8.2.1. Subnet routes	51
8.2.2. Routing to an IP address (gateway route)	51
8.2.3. Special targets	51
8.3. Dynamic route creation / deletion	52
8.4. Routing tables	52
8.5. Route overrides	52
9. Profiles	54
9.1. Overview	54
9.2. Creating/editing profiles	54
9.2.1. Timing control	54
9.2.2. Tests	55
9.2.2.1. General tests	55
9.2.2.2. Time/date tests	55
9.2.2.3. Ping tests	55
9.2.3. Inverting overall test result	55
9.2.4. Manual override	55
10. Traffic Shaping	57
10.1. Graphs and Shapers	57
10.1.1. Graphs	57
10.1.2. Shapers	57
11. PPPoE	59
11.1. Types of DSL line and router in the United Kingdom	59
11.2. Defining PPPoE links	60
11.2.1. IPv6	60
11.2.2. Additional options	60
11.2.2.1. MTU and TCP fix	60
11.2.2.2. Service and ac-name	61
11.2.2.3. Logging	61
11.2.2.4. Speed and graphs	61
12. Tunnels	62
12.1. FB105 tunnels	62
12.1.1. Tunnel wrapper packets	62
12.1.2. Setting up a tunnel	62
12.1.3. Viewing tunnel status	63
12.1.4. Dynamic routes	63
12.1.5. Tunnel bonding	63
12.1.6. Tunnels and NAT	64
12.1.6.1. FB2700 doing NAT	64
12.1.6.2. Another device doing NAT	64
13. USB Port	66
13.1. USB configuration	66
13.1.1. 3G dongle configuration	66
14. System Services	67
14.1. Common settings	67
14.2. HTTP Server configuration	68

14.2.1. Access control	68
14.2.1.1. Trusted addresses	68
14.3. Telnet Server configuration	68
14.3.1. Access control	68
14.4. DNS configuration	69
14.4.1. Blocking DNS names	69
14.4.2. Local DNS responses	69
14.4.3. Auto DHCP DNS	69
14.5. NTP configuration	69
14.6. SNMP configuration	70
14.7. RADIUS configuration	70
14.7.1. RADIUS server (platform RADIUS)	70
14.7.2. RADIUS client	70
15. Network Diagnostic Tools	71
15.1. Firewalling check	71
15.2. Access check	72
15.3. Packet Dumping	72
15.3.1. Dump parameters	73
15.3.2. Security settings required	73
15.3.3. IP address matching	74
15.3.4. Packet types	74
15.3.5. Snaplen specification	74
15.3.6. Using the web interface	74
15.3.7. Using an HTTP client	75
15.3.7.1. Example using curl and tcpdump	75
16. VRRP	76
16.1. Virtual Routers	76
16.2. Configuring VRRP	76
16.2.1. Advertisement Interval	77
16.2.2. Priority	77
16.3. Using a virtual router	77
16.4. VRRP versions	77
16.4.1. VRRP version 2	77
16.4.2. VRRP version 3	77
16.5. Compatibility	78
17. VoIP	79
17.1. What is VoIP?	79
17.2. Registration and Proxies	79
17.2.1. Registrar	79
17.2.2. Proxy	79
17.3. Home/office phone system	80
17.4. Network Address Translation	80
17.5. Number plan	81
17.6. Telephone handsets	81
17.7. VoIP call carriers	82
17.8. Hunt groups	82
17.8.1. Ring Type	83
17.8.2. Ring order	83
17.8.3. Overflow	83
17.8.4. Out of hours	83
17.9. Call pickup/steal	83
17.10. Busy lamp field	84
17.11. Using RADIUS	84
17.11.1. RADIUS accounting	84
17.11.2. RADIUS authentication	85
17.11.2.1. Call routing by RADIUS	85

17.12. Call recording	86
17.13. Voicemail and IVR services	87
17.14. Call Data Records	87
17.15. Technical details	88
17.16. Custom tones	88
18. BGP	90
18.1. What is BGP?	90
18.2. Using BGP in an office network?	90
19. L2TP	91
19.1. What is L2TP?	91
19.2. Incoming L2TP connections	91
19.3. The importance of CQM graphs	91
19.4. Local Authentication	91
19.5. Relaying L2TP connections	91
19.6. RADIUS Authentication and Accounting	91
19.7. RADIUS Control messages	91
19.8. Outgoing L2TP connections	91
20. IPsec	92
20.1. What is IPsec?	92
20.1.1. Authentication	92
20.1.2. Encryption	92
20.1.3. IKE	92
20.2. Setting up a tunnel	93
20.2.1. IP endpoints	93
20.2.2. Manual Keying	93
20.2.3. Routing	94
20.2.4. Other parameters	94
20.3. Tunnelling to a non-FireBrick device	94
20.4. Remote connection - IPsec and L2TP	95
20.5. Choice of algorithms	95
21. Command Line Interface	96
A. Factory Reset Procedure	97
B. CIDR and CIDR Notation	99
C. MAC Addresses usage	101
D. VLANs : A primer	103
E. Supported L2TP Attribute/Value Pairs	104
E.1. Start-Control-Connection-Request	104
E.2. Start-Control-Connection-Reply	104
E.3. Start-Control-Connection-Connected	105
E.4. Stop-Control-Connection-Notification	105
E.5. Hello	105
E.6. Incoming-Call-Request	105
E.7. Incoming-Call-Reply	106
E.8. Incoming-Call-Connected	106
E.9. Outgoing-Call-Request	106
E.10. Outgoing-Call-Reply	107
E.11. Outgoing-Call-Connected	107
E.12. Call-Disconnect-Notify	107
E.13. WAN-Error-Notify	107
E.14. Set-Link-Info	107
E.15. Notes	108
E.15.1. BT specific notes	108
E.15.2. IP over LCP	108
F. Supported RADIUS Attribute/Value Pairs for L2TP operation	109
F.1. Authentication request	109
F.2. Authentication response	110

F.2.1. Accepted authentication	110
F.2.1.1. Prefix Delegation	111
F.2.2. Rejected authentication	111
F.3. Accounting Start	111
F.4. Accounting Interim	112
F.5. Accounting Stop	113
F.6. Disconnect	114
F.7. Change of Authorisation	114
F.8. Filter ID	115
F.9. Notes	116
F.9.1. L2TP relay	116
F.9.2. LCP echo and CQM graphs	116
F.9.3. IP over LCP	117
F.9.4. Closed User Group	117
F.9.5. Routing table	117
G. Supported RADIUS Attribute/Value Pairs for VoIP operation	118
G.1. Authentication request	118
G.2. Authentication response	119
G.2.1. Challenge authentication	119
G.2.2. Accepted authentication (registration)	119
G.2.3. Accepted authentication (invite)	119
G.2.4. Rejected authentication	119
G.3. Accounting Start	120
G.4. Accounting Interim	120
G.5. Accounting Stop	120
G.6. Disconnect	121
G.7. Change of Authorisation	121
H. Command line reference	122
H.1. General commands	122
H.1.1. Trace off	122
H.1.2. Trace on	122
H.1.3. Uptime	122
H.1.4. General status	122
H.1.5. Memory usage	122
H.1.6. Process/task usage	122
H.1.7. Login	122
H.1.8. Logout	123
H.1.9. See XML configuration	123
H.1.10. Load XML configuration	123
H.1.11. Show profile status	123
H.1.12. Show RADIUS servers	123
H.1.13. Show DNS resolvers	123
H.2. Networking commands	123
H.2.1. Subnets	123
H.2.2. Ping and trace	124
H.2.3. Show a route from the routing table	124
H.2.4. List routes	124
H.2.5. List routing next hops	124
H.2.6. See DHCP allocations	124
H.2.7. Clear DHCP allocations	124
H.2.8. Lock DHCP allocations	125
H.2.9. Unlock DHCP allocations	125
H.2.10. Name DHCP allocations	125
H.2.11. Show ARP/ND status	125
H.2.12. Show VRRP status	125
H.2.13. Send Wake-on-LAN packet	125

H.3. Firewalling commands	125
H.3.1. Check access to services	125
H.3.2. Check firewall logic	125
H.4. USB/dongle commands	126
H.4.1. Show dongle connectoons	126
H.4.2. Reset USB interface and all attached devices	126
H.4.3. Reset PPP/Dongle data connection	126
H.5. L2TP commands	126
H.6. BGP commands	126
H.7. PPPoE commands	126
H.8. VoIP commands	126
H.9. Dongle/USB commands	127
H.10. Advanced commands	127
H.10.1. Panic	127
H.10.2. Reboot	127
H.10.3. Screen width	127
H.10.4. Make outbound command session	127
H.10.5. Show command sessions	127
H.10.6. Kill command session	127
H.10.7. Flash memory list	128
H.10.8. Delete block from flash	128
H.10.9. Boot log	128
H.10.10. Flash log	128
I. Configuration Objects	129
I.1. Top level	129
I.1.1. config: Top level config	129
I.2. Objects	130
I.2.1. system: System settings	130
I.2.2. link: Web links	131
I.2.3. user: Admin users	131
I.2.4. log: Log target controls	131
I.2.5. log-syslog: Syslog logger settings	132
I.2.6. log-email: Email logger settings	132
I.2.7. services: System services	133
I.2.8. snmp-service: SNMP service settings	133
I.2.9. ntp-service: NTP service settings	134
I.2.10. telnet-service: Telnet service settings	135
I.2.11. http-service: HTTP service settings	135
I.2.12. dns-service: DNS service settings	136
I.2.13. dns-host: Fixed local DNS host settings	136
I.2.14. dns-block: Fixed local DNS blocks	137
I.2.15. radius-service: RADIUS service definition	137
I.2.16. radius-service-match: Matching rules for RADIUS service	138
I.2.17. radius-server: RADIUS server settings	139
I.2.18. ethernet: Physical port controls	140
I.2.19. portdef: Port grouping and naming	140
I.2.20. interface: Port-group/VLAN interface settings	141
I.2.21. subnet: Subnet settings	142
I.2.22. vrrp: VRRP settings	142
I.2.23. dhcp: DHCP server settings	143
I.2.24. dhcp-attr-hex: DHCP server attributes (hex)	144
I.2.25. dhcp-attr-string: DHCP server attributes (string)	144
I.2.26. dhcp-attr-number: DHCP server attributes (numeric)	145
I.2.27. dhcp-attr-ip: DHCP server attributes (IP)	145
I.2.28. pppoe: PPPoE settings	145
I.2.29. ppp-route: PPP routes	146

I.2.30. usb: USB 3G/dongle settings	147
I.2.31. dongle: 3G/dongle settings	147
I.2.32. route: Static routes	148
I.2.33. network: Locally originated networks	149
I.2.34. blackhole: Dead end networks	149
I.2.35. loopback: Locally originated networks	149
I.2.36. bgp: Overall BGP settings	150
I.2.37. bgppeer: BGP peer definitions	150
I.2.38. bgpmap: Mapping and filtering rules of BGP prefixes	152
I.2.39. bgprule: Individual mapping/filtering rule	152
I.2.40. cqm: Constant Quality Monitoring settings	153
I.2.41. l2tp: L2TP settings	154
I.2.42. l2tp-outgoing: L2TP settings for outgoing L2TP connections	155
I.2.43. l2tp-incoming: L2TP settings for incoming L2TP connections	156
I.2.44. l2tp-relay: Relay and local authentication rules for L2TP	158
I.2.45. fb105: FB105 tunnel definition	158
I.2.46. fb105-route: FB105 routes	159
I.2.47. ipsec: IPsec onfiguration	160
I.2.48. ipsec-route: IPsec tunnel routes	161
I.2.49. ping: Ping/graph definition	161
I.2.50. profile: Control profile	162
I.2.51. profile-date: Test passes if within any of the time ranges specified	163
I.2.52. profile-time: Test passes if within any of the date/time ranges specified	163
I.2.53. profile-ping: Test passes if any addresses are pingable	163
I.2.54. shaper: Traffic shaper	164
I.2.55. shaper-override: Traffic shaper override based on profile	164
I.2.56. ip-group: IP Group	165
I.2.57. route-override: Routing override rules	165
I.2.58. session-route-rule: Routing override rule	165
I.2.59. session-route-share: Route override load sharing	166
I.2.60. rule-set: Firewall/mapping rule set	166
I.2.61. session-rule: Firewall rules	167
I.2.62. session-share: Firewall load sharing	168
I.2.63. voip: Voice over IP config	169
I.2.64. carrier: VoIP carrier details	170
I.2.65. telephone: VoIP telephone authentication user details	171
I.2.66. tone: Tone definitions	172
I.2.67. ringgroup: Ring groups	172
I.3. Data types	173
I.3.1. autoloadtype: Type of s/w auto load	173
I.3.2. config-access: Type of access user has to config	173
I.3.3. user-level: User login level	173
I.3.4. syslog-severity: Syslog severity	174
I.3.5. syslog-facility: Syslog facility	174
I.3.6. month: Month name (3 letter)	175
I.3.7. day: Day name (3 letter)	175
I.3.8. radiuspriority: Options for controlling platform RADIUS response priority tagging	175
I.3.9. radiustype: Type of RADIUS server	176
I.3.10. port: Physical port	176
I.3.11. Crossover: Crossover configuration	176
I.3.12. LinkSpeed: Physical port speed	176
I.3.13. LinkDuplex: Physical port duplex setting	177
I.3.14. LinkFlow: Physical port flow control setting	177
I.3.15. LinkClock: Physical port Gigabit clock master/slave setting	177
I.3.16. LinkLED: LED settings	177
I.3.17. LinkPower: PHY power saving options	178

I.3.18. LinkFault: Link fault type to send	178
I.3.19. ramode: IPv6 route announce level	178
I.3.20. dhcpv6control: Control for RA and DHCPv6 bits	179
I.3.21. bgpmode: BGP announcement mode	179
I.3.22. pppoe-mode: Type of PPPoE connection	179
I.3.23. pdp-context-type: Type of IP connection	179
I.3.24. peertype: BGP peer type	179
I.3.25. ipsec-type: IPsec encapsulation type	180
I.3.26. ipsec-mode: IPsec encapsulation mode	180
I.3.27. ipsec-auth-algorithm: IPsec authentication algorithm	180
I.3.28. ipsec-crypt-algorithm: IPsec encryption algorithm	180
I.3.29. firewall-action: Firewall action	181
I.3.30. voip-format: Number presentation format	181
I.3.31. uknumberformat: Number formatting option	181
I.3.32. recordoption: Recording option	181
I.3.33. ring-group-order: Order of ring	182
I.3.34. ring-group-type: Type of ring when one call in queue	182
I.4. Basic types	182
Index	185

List of Figures

2.1. Initial web page in factory reset state	7
2.2. Initial "Users" page	7
2.3. Setting up a new user	8
2.4. Configuration being stored	8
3.1. Main menu	12
3.2. Icons for layout controls	13
3.3. Icons for configuration categories	13
3.4. The "Setup" category	14
3.5. Editing an "Interface" object	14
3.6. Show hidden attributes	15
3.7. Attribute definitions	15
3.8. Navigation controls	16
4.1. Setting up a new user	21
4.2. Software upgrade available notification	25
4.3. Manual Software upload	26
7.1. Example sessions created by drop and reject actions	43
7.2. Processing flow chart for rule-sets and session-rules	45
C.1. Product label showing MAC address range	101

List of Tables

2.1. IP addresses for computer	6
2.2. IP addresses to access the FireBrick	6
2.3. IP addresses to access the FireBrick	6
3.1. Special character sequences	17
4.1. User login levels	22
4.2. Configuration access levels	22
4.3. General administrative details attributes	23
4.4. Attributes controlling auto-upgrades	26
4.5. Power LED status indications	27
5.1. Logging attributes	29
5.2. System-Event Logging attributes	32
6.1. Physical port usage options	33
6.2. Port LED functions	39
6.3. Example modified Port LED functions	39
7.1. Action attribute values	43
8.1. Route targets	51
14.1. List of system services	67
14.2. List of system services	67
15.1. Packet dump parameters	73
15.2. Packet types that can be captured	74
17.1. Ring Type	83
17.2. Ring Order	83
17.3. Access-Accept	86
17.4. Default tones	88
20.1. IPsec algorithm key lengths	93
C.1. DHCP client names used	102
E.1. SCCRQ	104
E.2. SCCRP	104
E.3. SCCCN	105
E.4. StopCCN	105
E.5. HELLO	105
E.6. ICRQ	105
E.7. ICRP	106
E.8. ICCN	106
E.9. OCRQ	106
E.10. OCRP	107
E.11. OCCN	107
E.12. CDN	107
E.13. WEN	107
E.14. SLI	107
F.1. Access-request	109
F.2. Access-Accept	110
F.3. Access-Reject	111
F.4. Accounting-Start	111
F.5. Accounting-Interim	112
F.6. Accounting-Stop	113
F.7. Disconnect	114
F.8. Change-of-Authorisation	114
F.9. Filter-ID	115
G.1. Access-request	118
G.2. Access-Challenge	119
G.3. Access-Accept	119
G.4. Access-Accept	119
G.5. Access-Reject	119

G.6. Accounting-Start	120
G.7. Accounting-Interim	120
G.8. Accounting-Stop	120
G.9. Disconnect	121
G.10. Change-of-Authorisation	121
I.1. config: Attributes	129
I.2. config: Elements	129
I.3. system: Attributes	130
I.4. system: Elements	130
I.5. link: Attributes	131
I.6. user: Attributes	131
I.7. log: Attributes	131
I.8. log: Elements	132
I.9. log-syslog: Attributes	132
I.10. log-email: Attributes	132
I.11. services: Elements	133
I.12. snmp-service: Attributes	133
I.13. ntp-service: Attributes	134
I.14. telnet-service: Attributes	135
I.15. http-service: Attributes	135
I.16. dns-service: Attributes	136
I.17. dns-service: Elements	136
I.18. dns-host: Attributes	136
I.19. dns-block: Attributes	137
I.20. radius-service: Attributes	137
I.21. radius-service: Elements	138
I.22. radius-service-match: Attributes	138
I.23. radius-server: Attributes	139
I.24. ethernet: Attributes	140
I.25. portdef: Attributes	140
I.26. interface: Attributes	141
I.27. interface: Elements	141
I.28. subnet: Attributes	142
I.29. vrrp: Attributes	143
I.30. dhcps: Attributes	143
I.31. dhcps: Elements	144
I.32. dhcp-attr-hex: Attributes	144
I.33. dhcp-attr-string: Attributes	144
I.34. dhcp-attr-number: Attributes	145
I.35. dhcp-attr-ip: Attributes	145
I.36. pppoe: Attributes	145
I.37. pppoe: Elements	146
I.38. ppp-route: Attributes	146
I.39. usb: Attributes	147
I.40. usb: Elements	147
I.41. dongle: Attributes	147
I.42. dongle: Elements	148
I.43. route: Attributes	148
I.44. network: Attributes	149
I.45. blackhole: Attributes	149
I.46. loopback: Attributes	149
I.47. bgp: Attributes	150
I.48. bgp: Elements	150
I.49. bgppeer: Attributes	150
I.50. bgppeer: Elements	152
I.51. bgpmap: Attributes	152

I.52. bgpmap: Elements	152
I.53. bgprule: Attributes	152
I.54. cqm: Attributes	153
I.55. l2tp: Attributes	155
I.56. l2tp: Elements	155
I.57. l2tp-outgoing: Attributes	155
I.58. l2tp-outgoing: Elements	156
I.59. l2tp-incoming: Attributes	156
I.60. l2tp-incoming: Elements	157
I.61. l2tp-relay: Attributes	158
I.62. fb105: Attributes	158
I.63. fb105: Elements	159
I.64. fb105-route: Attributes	160
I.65. ipsec: Attributes	160
I.66. ipsec: Elements	161
I.67. ipsec-route: Attributes	161
I.68. ping: Attributes	161
I.69. profile: Attributes	162
I.70. profile: Elements	163
I.71. profile-date: Attributes	163
I.72. profile-time: Attributes	163
I.73. profile-ping: Attributes	163
I.74. shaper: Attributes	164
I.75. shaper: Elements	164
I.76. shaper-override: Attributes	164
I.77. ip-group: Attributes	165
I.78. route-override: Attributes	165
I.79. route-override: Elements	165
I.80. session-route-rule: Attributes	165
I.81. session-route-rule: Elements	166
I.82. session-route-share: Attributes	166
I.83. rule-set: Attributes	167
I.84. rule-set: Elements	167
I.85. session-rule: Attributes	167
I.86. session-rule: Elements	168
I.87. session-share: Attributes	168
I.88. voip: Attributes	169
I.89. voip: Elements	170
I.90. carrier: Attributes	170
I.91. telephone: Attributes	171
I.92. tone: Attributes	172
I.93. ringgroup: Attributes	172
I.94. autoloadtype: Type of s/w auto load	173
I.95. config-access: Type of access user has to config	173
I.96. user-level: User login level	173
I.97. syslog-severity: Syslog severity	174
I.98. syslog-facility: Syslog facility	174
I.99. month: Month name (3 letter)	175
I.100. day: Day name (3 letter)	175
I.101. radiuspriority: Options for controlling platform RADIUS response priority tagging	175
I.102. radiustype: Type of RADIUS server	176
I.103. port: Physical port	176
I.104. Crossover: Crossover configuration	176
I.105. LinkSpeed: Physical port speed	176
I.106. LinkDuplex: Physical port duplex setting	177
I.107. LinkFlow: Physical port flow control setting	177

I.108. LinkClock: Physical port Gigabit clock master/slave setting	177
I.109. LinkLED: LED settings	177
I.110. LinkPower: PHY power saving options	178
I.111. LinkFault: Link fault type to send	178
I.112. ramode: IPv6 route announce level	178
I.113. dhcpv6control: Control for RA and DHCPv6 bits	179
I.114. bgpmode: BGP announcement mode	179
I.115. pppoe-mode: Type of PPPoE connection	179
I.116. pdp-context-type: Type of IP connection	179
I.117. peertype: BGP peer type	180
I.118. ipsec-type: IPsec encapsulation type	180
I.119. ipsec-mode: IPsec encapsulation mode	180
I.120. ipsec-auth-algorithm: IPsec authentication algorithm	180
I.121. ipsec-crypt-algorithm: IPsec encryption algorithm	180
I.122. firewall-action: Firewall action	181
I.123. voip-format: Number presentation format	181
I.124. uknumberformat: Number formatting option	181
I.125. recordoption: Recording option	181
I.126. ring-group-order: Order of ring	182
I.127. ring-group-type: Type of ring when one call in queue	182
I.128. Basic data types	182

Preface

The FB2700 device is the result of several years of intensive effort to create products based on state of the art processing platforms, featuring an entirely new operating system and IPv6-capable networking software, written from scratch in-house by the FireBrick team. Custom designed hardware, manufactured in the UK, hosts the new software, and ensures FireBrick are able to maximise performance from the hardware, and maintain exceptional levels of quality and reliability.

The result is a product that has the feature set and performance to handle the tasks encountered in today's office networking environments, where new access technologies such as Fibre To The Cabinet (FTTC) deliver faster connections than ever before.

The new software is closely related to that which runs on FireBrick's 'big-box' product, the FB6000, a carrier-grade product that has been proven in the field for a number of years, effortlessly handling huge volumes of traffic, and thousands of customer connections.

The software is constantly being improved and new features added, so please check that you are reading the manual appropriate to the version of software you are using. This manual is for version V1.25.003.

Chapter 1. Introduction

1.1. The FB2700

1.1.1. Where do I start?

The FB2700 is shipped in a *factory reset* state. This means it has a default configuration that allows the unit to be attached directly to a computer, or into an existing network, and is accessible via a web browser on a known IP address for further configuration.

Besides allowing initial web access to the unit, the factory reset configuration provides a starting point for you to develop a bespoke configuration that meets your requirements.

A printed copy of the QuickStart Guide is included with your FB2700 and covers the basic set up required to gain access to the web based user interface. If you have already followed the steps in the QuickStart guide, and are able to access the FB2700 via a web browser, you can begin to work with the factory reset configuration by referring to Chapter 3.

Initial set up is also covered in this manual, so if you have not already followed the QuickStart Guide, please start at Chapter 2.

Tip

The FB2700's configuration can be restored to the state it was in when shipped from the factory. The procedure requires physical access to the FB2700, and can be applied if you have made configuration changes that have resulted in loss of access to the web user interface, or any other situation where it is appropriate to start from scratch - for example, commissioning an existing unit for a different role, or where you've forgotten an administrative user password. It is also possible to temporarily reset the FB2700 to allow you to recover and edit a broken configuration. For details on the factory reset procedure please refer to Appendix A, or consult the QuickStart Guide.

The remainder of this chapter provides an overview of the FB2700's capabilities, and covers your product support options.

Tip

The latest version of the QuickStart guide for the FB2700 can be obtained from the FireBrick website at : <http://www.firebrick.co.uk/pdfs/quickstart-2700.pdf>

1.1.2. What can it do?

The FB2700 is an extremely versatile network appliance which you can think of as something akin to a Swiss army knife for networking.

It can :

- act as a firewall, to protect your network from direct attack over the Internet.
- allocate network addresses to machines on your network (e.g. DHCP)
- manage multiple networks at once
- modify traffic passing through to do address and protocol-port mapping
- control the speed of different types of traffic (traffic shaping)

- handle IPv6 - ready for the day that all five regional Internet registries (RIRs) exhaust their allocations!
- 3G dongle support for mobile internet or DSL backup

and much more...

1.1.3. Ethernet port capabilities

The FB2700 has four Ethernet network ports that can operate at 10Mb/s, 100Mb/s, or 1Gb/s. The ports implement auto-negotiation by default, but operation can be fine-tuned to suit specific circumstances. The function of these ports is very flexible, and defined by the device's configuration. The ports implement one or more *interfaces*, and each interface can span either a single port or a user-defined group of ports.

When a port group is defined, the ports in the group work as a conventional Layer 2 network switch, directly transferring traffic at wire-speed that is destined for a Layer 2 address that is present on one of the other ports in the group.

Conversely, multiple interfaces can be implemented on a single physical port via support for IEEE 802.1Q VLANs, ideal for using the FB2700 with VLAN-capable network switches. In this case, a single physical connection can be made between a VLAN-capable switch and the FB2700, and with the switch configured appropriately, this physical connection will carry traffic to/from multiple VLANs, and the FB2700 can do Layer 3 processing (routing/firewalling etc.) between nodes on two or more VLANs.

1.1.4. Differences between the devices in the FB2x00 series

The main difference between the two devices in the series is that the FB2500 can route traffic at up to 100Mb/s, whilst the FB2700 is faster - typically up to 350Mb/s.

The other advantage the FB2700 offers is that you can directly attach an ordinary 3G dongle via the USB port on the front, and use a mobile data connection - this is typically used as a back up for a DSL line.

1.1.5. Software features

The FB2700 has a simple two level software-feature-set. Devices are either "base" model or a "fully-loaded" model. The base model lacks a few of the features such as BGP, L2TP and various bonding features.

You can use the basic features such as routing packets, filtering (firewalling) or arranging a 3G fallback for your DSL line.

The "fully-loaded" model is useful for bonding multiple lines, and more obscure features such as announcing addresses to an upstream provider by BGP.

It is possible to upgrade from "base" to "fully-loaded" at a later date if you wish. Contact your dealer for details.

1.1.6. Migration from previous FireBrick models

Many FB2700 users may well be migrating from earlier FireBrick products, such as the FireBrick 105, to take advantage of the significantly higher performance of the FB2700, and perhaps to use features that simply didn't exist on the FB105. As you will see from reading Chapter 3, the new range of FireBrick products introduce a modern, well structured configuration based on an underlying XML file. The User Interface is intentionally closely coupled with the XML structures, and this will likely be the most apparent visual difference for users experienced with the FB105.

To aid the transition, a translator is provided which will generate an FB2700 XML configuration file from an FB105 configuration file, mapping features and functionality across as closely as is possible ; the converted

configuration should be treated as a starting point for using your FB2700 in place of your FB105, as the result from the converter may be incomplete, or there may be aspects that cannot be carried over. The translator can be accessed at : <http://www.firebrick.co.uk/fb105-2700.php>

If you have one or more FB105 devices in your network, you'll be pleased to know that the FB2700 supports the FB105 tunnel protocol, and will interwork seamlessly, allowing you to upgrade devices as time and budgets allow.

Your dealer can also give you advice on converting configurations from older FB105 based networks.

1.2. About this Manual

1.2.1. Version

Every major FB2700 software release is accompanied by a release-specific version of this manual. This manual documents software version V1.25.003 - please refer to Section 4.3 to find out more about software releases, and to see how to identify which software version your FB2700 is currently running.

If your FB2700 is running a different version of system software, then please consult the version of this manual that documents that specific version, as there may be significant differences between the software versions. Also bear in mind that if you are not reading the latest version of the manual (and using the latest software release), references in this manual to external resources, such as the FireBrick website, may be out of date.

Tip

If this is the correct manual for your current software version, then note that there may be a newer *revision* of this manual available, still covering the same software version, but with improvements or corrections to the documentation. We recommend you always ensure you are using the latest revision available, to be sure you are using the most accurate and up-to-date information.

You can find the latest revision of a manual for a specific software version on the FB2700 software downloads website [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/software.php?PRODUCT=2700>]. This includes the revision history for all software releases.

1.2.2. Intended audience

This manual is intended to guide FB2700 owners in configuring their units for their specific applications. We try to make no significant assumption about the reader's knowledge of FireBrick products, but as might be expected given the target market for the products, it is assumed the reader has a reasonable working knowledge of common IP and Ethernet networking concepts. So, whether you've used FireBrick products for years, or have purchased one for the very first time, and whether you're a novice or a network guru, this Manual sets out to be an easy to read, definitive guide to FireBrick product configuration for all FireBrick customers.

1.2.3. Technical details

There are a number of useful technical details included in the appendices. These are intended to be a reference guild for key features.

1.2.4. Document style

At FireBrick, we appreciate that different people learn in different ways - some like to dive in, hands-on, working with examples and tweaking them until they work the way they want, referring to documentation as required. Other people prefer to build their knowledge up from first principles, and gain a thorough understanding of what they're working with. Most people we suspect fall somewhere between these two learning styles.

This Manual aims to be highly usable regardless of your learning style - material is presented in an order that starts with fundamental concepts, and builds to more complex operation of your FireBrick. At all stages we hope to provide a well-written description of how to configure each aspect of the FireBrick, and - where necessary - provide enough insight into the FireBrick's internal operation that you understand *why* the configuration achieves what it does.

1.2.5. Document conventions

Various typefaces and presentation styles are used in this document as follows :-

- Text that would be typed as-is, for example a command, or an XML attribute name is shown in `monospaced_font`
- Program (including XML) listings, or fragments of listings are shown thus :-

```
/* this is an example program listing*/  
printf("Hello World!\n");
```

- Text as it would appear on-screen is shown thus :-

```
This is an example of some text that would  
appear on screen.  
Note that for documentation purposes additional  
line-breaks may be present that would not be in the on-screen text
```

- Notes of varying levels of significance are represented thus (colour schemes may differ depending on significance) :-

Note

This is an example note.

The significance is identified by the heading text and can be one of : Tip - general hints and tips, for example to point out a useful feature related to the current discussion ; Note - a specific, but not critical, point relating to the surrounding text ; Caution - a potentially critical point that you should pay attention to, failure to do so may result in *loss of data, security issues, loss of network connectivity etc.*

1.2.6. Comments and feedback

If you'd like to make any comments on this Manual, point out errors, make suggestions for improvement or provide any other feedback, we would be pleased to hear from you via e-mail at : `docs@firebrick.co.uk`.

1.3. Additional Resources

1.3.1. Technical Support

Technical support is available, in the first instance, via the reseller from which you purchased your FireBrick. FireBrick provide extensive training and support to resellers and you will find them experts in Firebrick products.

However, before contacting them, please ensure you have :-

- upgraded your FB2700 to the latest version of software (see Section 4.3) and
- are using the latest revision of the manual applicable to that software version and
- have attempted to answer your query using the material in this manual

Many FireBrick resellers also offer general IT support, including installation, configuration, maintenance, and training. You may be able to get your reseller to develop FB2700 configurations for you - although this will typically be chargeable, you may well find this cost-effective, especially if you are new to FireBrick products.

If you are not satisfied with the support you are getting from your reseller, please contact us [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/contact.php>].

1.3.2. IRC Channel

A public IRC channel is available for FireBrick discussion - the IRC server is `irc.z.je`, and the channel is `#firebrick`.

1.3.3. Application Notes

FireBrick are building a library of Application Note documents that you can refer to - each Application Note describes how to use and configure a FireBrick in specific scenarios, such as using the device in a multi-tenant Serviced Office environment, or using the FireBrick to bond multiple WAN connections together.

1.3.4. White Papers

FireBrick White Papers cover topics that deserve specific discussion - they are not related to specific Applications, rather they aim to educate interested readers regarding networking protocols, common/best practice, and real-world issues encountered.

1.3.5. Training Courses

FireBrick provide training courses for the FB2x00 series products, and also training course on general IP networking that are useful if you are new to networking with IP.

To obtain information about upcoming courses, please contact us via e-mail at : training@firebrick.co.uk.

Chapter 2. Getting Started

2.1. IP addressing

You can configure your FireBrick using a web browser - to do this, you need IP connectivity between your computer and the FireBrick. For a new FB2700 or one that has been factory reset, there are three methods to set this up, as described below - select the method that you prefer, or that best suits your current network architecture.

- *Method 1* - use the FireBrick's DHCP server to configure a computer.

If your computer is already configured (as many are) to get an IP address automatically, you can connect your computer to port 1 on the FireBrick, and the FireBrick's inbuilt DHCP server should give it an IPv4 and IPv6 address.

- *Method 2* - configure a computer with a fixed IP address.

Alternatively, you can connect a computer to port 1 on the FireBrick, and manually configure your computer to have the fixed IP address(es) shown below :-

Table 2.1. IP addresses for computer

IPv6	IPv4
2001:DB8::2/64	10.0.0.2 ; subnet mask : 255.255.255.0

- *Method 3* - use an existing DHCP server to configure the FireBrick.

If your LAN already has a DHCP server, you can connect port 4 of your FireBrick to your LAN, and it will get an address. Port 4 is configured, by default, not to give out any addresses and as such it should not interfere with your existing network. You would need to check your DHCP server to find what address has been assigned to the FB2700.

2.2. Accessing the web-based user interface

If you used Method 1, you should browse to the FireBrick's web interface as follows, or you can use the IP addresses detailed:-

Table 2.2. IP addresses to access the FireBrick

URL
http://my.firebrick.co.uk/

If you used Method 2, you should browse to the FireBrick's IP address as listed below:-

Table 2.3. IP addresses to access the FireBrick

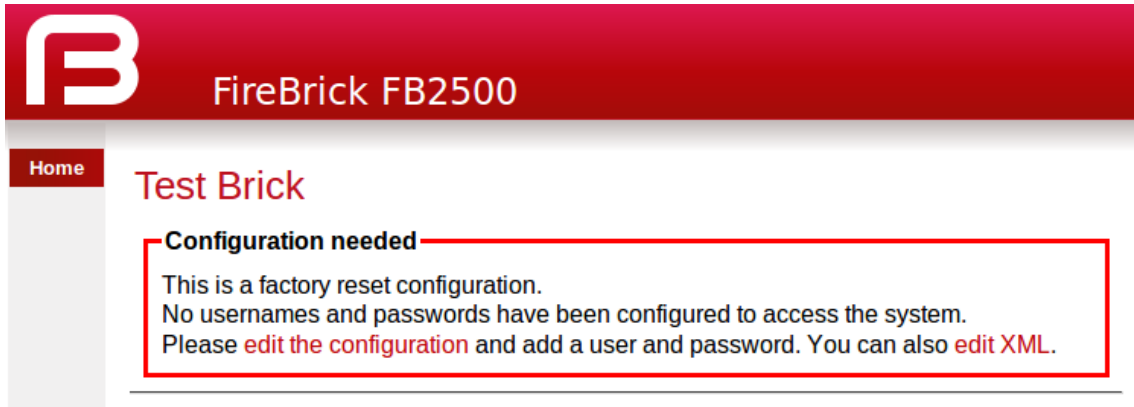
IPv6	IPv4
http://[2001:DB8::1]	http://10.0.0.1

If you used Method 3, you will need to be able to access a list of allocations made by the DHCP server in order to identify which IP address has been allocated to the FB2700, and then browse this address from your computer. If your DHCP server shows the client name that was supplied in the DHCP request, then you will see FB2700 in the client name field (assuming a factory reset configuration) - if you only have one FB2700 in factory reset state on your network, then it will be immediately obvious via this client name. Otherwise, you will need to locate the allocation by cross-referring with the MAC address range used by the FB2700 you are

interested in - if necessary, refer to Appendix C to see how to determine which MAC address you are looking for in the list of allocations.

Once you are connected to the FB2700, you should see a page with "Configuration needed" prominently displayed, as shown below :-

Figure 2.1. Initial web page in factory reset state



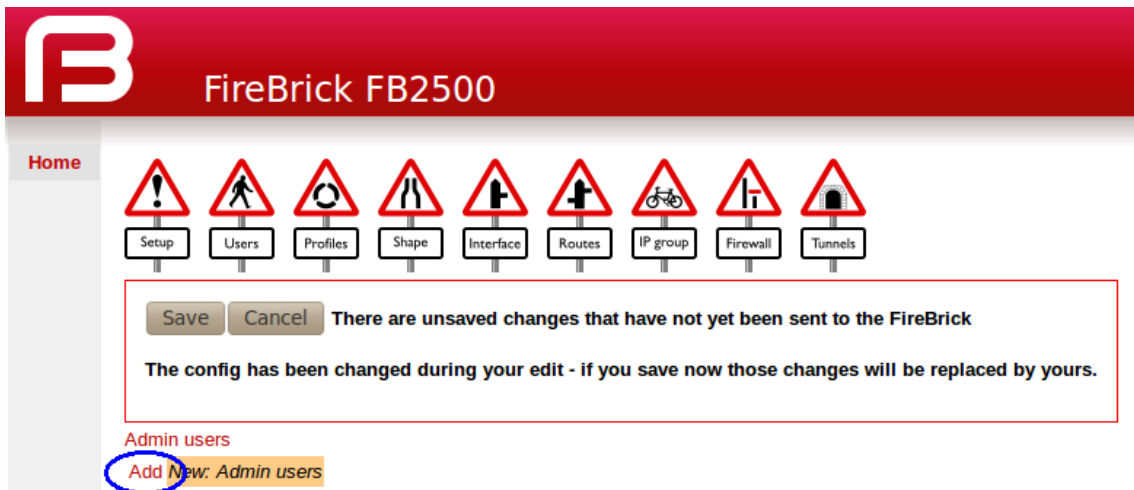
Click on the "edit the configuration" link (red text), which will take you to the main user interface page for managing the configuration.

2.2.1. Add a new user

You now need to add a new user with a password in order to gain full access to the FireBrick's user interface.

Click on the "Users" icon, then click on the "Add" link to add a user. The "Users" page is shown below, with the "Add" link highlighted:-

Figure 2.2. Initial "Users" page



Enter a suitable username in the "Name" box, and enter a password (passwords are mandatory), as shown below. Leave all other checkboxes un-ticked, but see the Tip below regarding the timeout setting.

Note

Take care to enter the password carefully, as the FB2700 does not prompt you for confirmation of the password.

Figure 2.3. Setting up a new user

Admin users :: user 1 of 1



User names, passwords and abilities for admin users

name <i>User name</i> <input type="text" value="reginald"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> comment <i>Comment</i>	profile <i>Profile name</i> None
password <i>User password</i> <input type="password" value="•••••"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> full-name <i>Full name</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> otp <i>OTP serial number</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> timeout <i>Login idle timeout</i> PT5M	<input type="checkbox"/> config <i>Config access level</i> full	<input type="checkbox"/> level <i>Login level</i> ADMIN
<input type="checkbox"/> allow <i>Restrict logins to be from specific IP addresses</i>		

Tip

You may also want to increase the login-session idle time-out from the default of 5 minutes, especially if you are unfamiliar with the user-interface. To do that, tick the checkbox next to `timeout`, and enter an appropriate value as minutes, colon, and seconds, e.g. 15:00 for 15 minutes.

Click on the Save button near the top of the screen which will save a new configuration that includes your new user definition.

You should now see a page showing the progress of storing the new configuration in Flash memory :-

Figure 2.4. Configuration being stored

```

Loading config
No errors found
Erasing flash page
Programming flash page
Flashed 1789 bytes
Config loaded. Please login to make any further changes.

Login
  
```

On this page there is a "Login" link (in red text)- click on this link and then log in using the username and password you chose.

We recommend you read Chapter 3 to understand the design of the FB2700's user interface, and then start working with your FB2700's factory reset configuration. Once you are familiar with how the user interface is structured, you can find more detail on setting up users in Section 4.1.

Chapter 3. Configuration

3.1. The Object Hierarchy

The FB2700 has, at its core, a configuration based on a *hierarchy of objects*, with each object having one or more *attributes*. An object has a *type*, which determines its role in the operation of the FB2700. The values of the attributes determine how that object affects operation. Attributes also have a *type* (or *datatype*), which defines the type of data that attribute specifies. This in turn defines what the valid syntax is for a value of that datatype - for example some are numeric, some are free-form strings, others are strings with a specific format, such as a dotted-quad IP address. Some examples of attribute values are :-

- IP addresses, and subnet definitions in CIDR format e.g. 192.168.10.0/24
- free-form descriptive text strings, e.g. a name for a firewall rule
- Layer 4 protocol port numbers e.g. TCP ports
- data rates used to control traffic shaping
- enumerated values used to control a feature e.g. defining Ethernet port LED functions

The object hierarchy can be likened to a family-tree, with relationships between objects referred to using terms such as Parent, Child, Sibling, Ancestor and Descendant. This tree-like structure is used to :-

- group a set of related objects, such as a set of firewall rules - the parent object acts as a container for a group of (child) objects, and may also contribute to defining the detailed behaviour of the group
- define a context for an object - for example, an object used to define a locally-attached subnet is a child of an object that defines an interface, and as such defines that the subnet is accessible on that specific interface. Since multiple interfaces can exist, other interface objects establish different contexts for subnet objects.

Additional inter-object associations are established via attribute values that reference other objects, typically by name, e.g. a firewall rule can specify one of several destinations for log information to be sent when the rule is processed.

3.2. The Object Model

The term 'object model' is used here to collectively refer to :-

- the constraints that define a valid object hierarchy - i.e. which object(s) are valid child objects for a given parent object, how many siblings of the same type can exist etc.
- for each object type, the allowable set of attributes, whether the attributes are mandatory or optional, their datatypes, and permissible values of those attributes

The bulk of this User Manual therefore serves to document the object model and how it controls operation of the FB2700.

Tip

This version of the User Manual may not yet be complete in its coverage of the full object model. Some more obscure attributes may not be covered at all - some of these may be attributes that are not used under any normal circumstances, and used only under guidance by support personnel. If you

encounter attribute(s) that are not documented in this manual, please refer in the first instance to the documentation described in Section 3.2.1 below. If that information doesn't help you, and you think the attribute(s) may be relevant to implementing your requirements, please consult the usual support channel(s) for advice.

3.2.1. Formal definition of the object model

The object model has a *formal* definition in the form of an XML Schema Document (XSD) file, which is itself an XML file, normally intended for machine-processing. A more readable version of this information is available by following the "Doc" link that is present against each software release on the FB2700 software downloads website [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/software.php?PRODUCT=2700>].

Note, however, that this is *reference* material, containing only brief descriptions, and intended for users who are familiar with the product, and in particular, for users configuring their units primarily via XML.

The XSD file is also available on the software downloads website by following the "XSD" link that is present against each software release.

3.2.2. Common attributes

Most objects have a `comment` attribute which is free-form text that can be used for any purpose. Similarly, most objects have a `source` attribute that is intended for use by automated configuration management tools. Neither of these attributes have a direct effect on the operation of the FB2700.

3.3. Configuration Methods

The configuration objects are created and manipulated by the user via one of two configuration methods :

- web-based graphical User Interface accessed using a supported web-browser
- an XML (eXtensible Markup Language) file representing the entire object hierarchy, editable via the web interface or can be uploaded to the FB2700

The two methods operate on the same underlying object model, and so it is possible to readily move between the two methods - changes made via the User Interface will be visible as changes to the XML, and vice-versa. Users may choose to start out using the User Interface, and - as experience with the object model and the XML language develops - increasingly make changes in the XML environment. For information on using XML to configure the FB2700, please refer to Section 3.5.

3.4. Web User Interface Overview

This section provides an overview of how to use the web-based User Interface. We recommend that you read this section if you are unfamiliar with the FB2700, so that you feel comfortable with the design of the User Interface. Later chapters cover specific functionality topics, describing which objects are relevant, any underlying operational principles that are useful to understand, and what effect the attributes (and their values) have.

The web-based User Interface provides a method to create the objects that control operation of the FB2700. Internally, the User Interface uses a formal definition of the object model to determine where (in the hierarchy) objects may be created, and what attributes may exist on each object, so you can expect the User Interface to always generate valid XML.¹

¹If the User Interface does not generate valid XML - i.e. when saving changes to the configuration the FireBrick reports XML errors, then this may be a bug - please check this via the appropriate support channel(s).

Additionally, the web User Interface provides access to the following items :-

- status information, such as DHCP server allocations, FB105 tunnel information and system logs
- network diagnostic tools, such as Ping and Traceroute ; there are also tools to test how the FB2700 will process particular traffic, allowing you to verify your firewalling is as intended
- traffic graphs

By default, access to the web user interface is available to all users, from any IP address. If you don't require such open access, you may wish to restrict access using the settings described in Section 14.2.

3.4.1. User Interface layout

The User Interface has the following general layout :-

- a 'banner' area at the top of the page, containing the FireBrick logo, model number and system name
- a main-menu, with sub-menus that access various parts of the user interface ; the main-menu can be shown vertically or horizontally - sub-menu appearance depends on this display style : if the main-menu is vertical, sub-menus are shown by 'expanding' the menu vertically ; if the main-menu is horizontal, sub-menus are shown as pull-down menus
- a 'footer' area at the bottom of the page, containing layout-control icons and showing the current software version
- the remaining page area contains the content for the selected part of the user-interface

Figure 3.1 shows the main menu when it is set to display horizontally. Note that the main-menu items themselves have a specific function when clicked - clicking such items displays a general page related to that item - for example, clicking on Status shows some overall status information, whereas sub-menu items under Status display specific categories of status information.

Figure 3.1. Main menu



The user interface pages used to change the device configuration are referred to as the 'config pages' in this manual - these pages are accessed by clicking on the "Edit" item in the sub-menu under the "Config" main-menu item.

Note

The config pages utilise JavaScript for their main functionality ; you must therefore have JavaScript enabled in your web browser in order to configure your FB2700 using the web interface.

3.4.1.1. Customising the layout

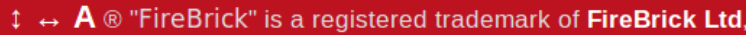
The following aspects of the user interface layout can be customised :-

- The banner area can be reduced in height, or removed all together
- The main menu strip can be positioned vertically at the left or right-hand sides, or horizontally at the top (under the banner, if present)

Additionally, you can choose to use the default fonts that are defined in your browser setup, or use the fonts specified by the user interface.

These customisations are controlled using three icons on the left-hand side of the page footer, as shown in Figure 3.2 below :-

Figure 3.2. Icons for layout controls



The first icon, an up/down arrow, controls the banner size/visibility and cycles through three settings : full size banner, reduced height banner, no banner. The next icon, a left/right arrow, controls the menu strip position and cycles through three settings : menu on the left, menu on the right, menu at the top. The last icon, the letter 'A', toggles between using browser-specified or user-interface-specified fonts.

Layout settings are stored in a cookie - since cookies are stored on your computer, and are associated with the DNS name or IP address used to browse to the FB2700, this means that settings that apply to a particular FB2700 will automatically be recalled next time you use the same computer/browser to connect to that FB2700.

3.4.2. Config pages and the object hierarchy

The structure of the config pages mirrors the object hierarchy, and therefore they are themselves naturally hierarchical. Your position in the hierarchy is illustrated in the 'breadcrumbs' trail at the top of the page, for example :-

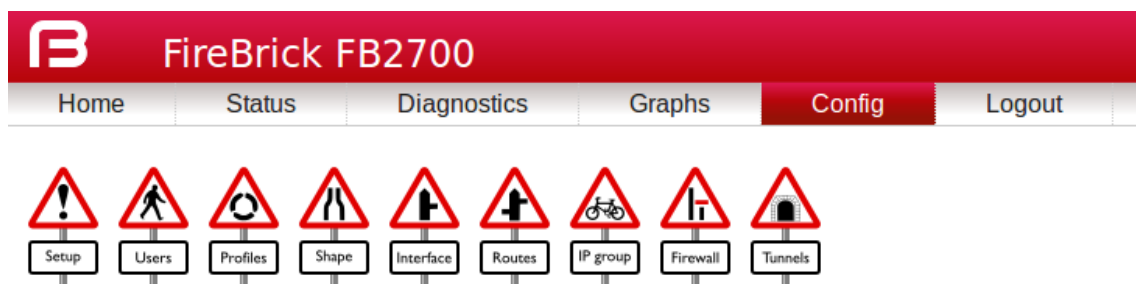
```
Firewall/mapping rules :: rule-set 1 of 3 (filters) :: rule 7 of 19 (ICMP)
```

This shows that the current page is showing a rule, which exists within a rule-set, which in turn is in the "Firewall/mapping rules" category (see below).

3.4.2.1. Configuration categories

Configuration objects are grouped into a number of *categories*. At the top of the config pages is a set of icons, one for each category, as shown in Figure 3.3 :-

Figure 3.3. Icons for configuration categories



Within each category, there are one or more sections delimited by horizontal lines. Each of these sections has a heading, and corresponds to a particular type of *top-level* object, and relates to a major part of the configuration that comes under the selected category. See Figure 3.4 for an example showing part of the "Setup" category, which includes general system settings (the `system` object) and control of system services (network services provided by the FB2700, such as the web-interface web server, telnet server etc., controlled by the `services` object).

Figure 3.4. The "Setup" category

System

System settings

	name	contact	location	intro	comment
Edit	ruby	Mike Chambers	WF Ryde Office	---	---

General system services

[Edit](#) General system services

Constant Quality Monitoring config

[Add](#) New: Constant Quality Monitoring config

Each section is displayed as a tabulated list showing any existing objects of the associated type. Each row of the table corresponds with one object, and a subset (typically those of most interest at a glance) of the object's attributes are shown in the columns - the column heading shows the attribute name. If no objects of that type exist, there will be a single row with an "Add" link. Where the order of the objects matter, there will be an 'Add' link against each object - clicking an 'Add' link for a particular object will insert a new object *before* it. To add a new object after the last existing one, click on the 'Add' link on the bottom (or only) row of the table.

Tip

If there is no 'Add' link present, then this means there can only exist one object of that type, and such an object already exists. The existing object may have originated from the factory reset configuration.

You can 'push-down' into the hierarchy by clicking the 'Edit' link in a table row. This takes you to a page to edit that specific object. The page also shows any child objects of the object being edited, using the same horizontal-line delimited section style used in the top-level categories. You can navigate back up the hierarchy using various methods - see Section 3.4.3.

3.4.2.2. Object settings

The details of an object are displayed as a matrix of boxes, one for each attribute associated with that object type. Figure 3.5 shows an example for an `interface` object (covered in Chapter 6) :-

Figure 3.5. Editing an "Interface" object

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> name Name WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> comment Comment	<input type="checkbox"/> profile Profile name	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> port Port group name WAN	<input type="checkbox"/> vlan VLAN ID (0=untagged) 0	<input type="checkbox"/> graph Graph name	<input type="checkbox"/> mtu MTU for this interface 1500
<input type="checkbox"/> ra-client Accept IPv6 RA and create auto config subnets and routes true	<input type="checkbox"/> ping Ping address to add loss/latency to graph for interface		<input type="checkbox"/> log Log events including DHCP and related events Not logging
<input type="checkbox"/> log-error Log errors Log as event	<input type="checkbox"/> log-debug Log debug Not logging		

By default, more advanced or less frequently used attributes are hidden - if this applies to the object being edited, you will see the text shown in Figure 3.6. The hidden attributes can be displayed by clicking on the link "Show all".

Figure 3.6. Show hidden attributes

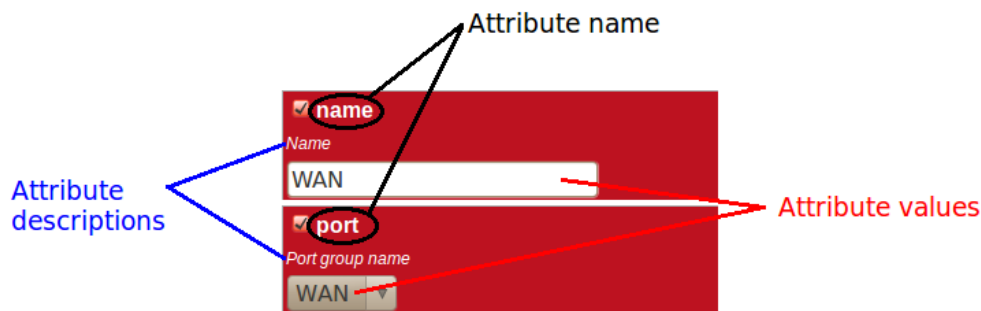
There are additional attributes which have not been shown. [Show all](#)

Each box in the matrix contains the following :-

- a checkbox - if the checkbox is checked, an appropriate value entry widget is displayed, otherwise, a *default* value is shown and applied for that setting.
- the attribute name - this is a compact string that exactly matches the underlying XML attribute name
- a short description of the attribute

These can be seen in Figure 3.7 :-

Figure 3.7. Attribute definitions



If the attribute value is shown in a 'strike-through' font (with a horizontal line through it mid-way vertically), this illustrates that the attribute can't be set - this will happen where the attribute value would reference an instance of particular type of object, but there are not currently any instances of objects of that type defined.

Tip

Since the attribute name is a compact, concise and un-ambiguous way of referring to an attribute, please quote attribute names when requesting technical support, and expect technical support staff to discuss your configuration primarily in terms of attribute (and object/element) names, rather than descriptive text, or physical location on your screen (both of which can vary between software releases).

Note

When the checkbox associated with an attribute is unchecked, this means the attribute value is *not (explicitly) specified*, and a *default* value is used. The default value is specified by the object model (see Section 3.2 via its associated formal definition (XSD file)). When the checkbox is unchecked, the default value is shown under the attribute description text, and in the XML configuration (see Section 3.5), there will be no `name="value"` specification present for the attribute.

3.4.3. Navigating around the User Interface

You navigate around the hierarchy using one or more of the following :-

- configuration category icons
- the breadcrumbs - each part of the breadcrumbs (delimited by the :: symbol) is a clickable link
- the *in-page* navigation buttons, shown in Figure 3.8 : "Up" - move one level up in the object hierarchy, "Prev" - Previous object in a list, and "Next" - Next object in a list.

Figure 3.8. Navigation controls

Interface :: interface 2 of 3 (LAN)



Caution

The configuration pages are generated on-the-fly using JavaScript within your web browser environment (i.e. client-side scripting). As such, the browser is essentially unaware of changes to page content, and cannot track these changes - *this means the browser's navigation buttons (Back, Forward), will not correctly navigate through a series of configuration pages.*

Please take care not to use the browser's Back button whilst working through configuration pages - navigation between such pages must be done via the buttons provided on the page - "Prev", "Next" and "Up".

Navigating away from an object *using the supported navigation controls* doesn't cause any modifications to that object to be lost, even if the configuration has not yet been saved back to the FB2700. All changes are initially held in-memory (in the web browser itself), and are committed back to the FireBrick only when you press the Save button.

The navigation button area, shown in Figure 3.8, also includes three other buttons :-

- New : creates a new instance of the object type being edited - the new object is inserted after the current one ; this is equivalent to using the "Add" link one level up in the hierarchy
- Erase : deletes the object being edited - note that the object will not actually be erased until the configuration is saved
- Help : browses to the online reference material (as described in Section 3.2.1) for the object type being edited

Caution

If you *Add* a new object, but don't fill in any parameter values, the object will remain in existence should you navigate away. You should be careful that you don't inadvertently add incompletely setup objects this way, as they may affect operation of the FireBrick, possibly with a detrimental effect.

If you have added an object, perhaps for the purposes of looking at what attributes can be set on it, remember to delete the object before you navigate away -- the "Erase" button (see Figure 3.8) is used to delete the object you are viewing.

3.4.4. Backing up / restoring the configuration

To back up / save or restore the configuration, start by clicking on the "Config" main-menu item. This will show a page with a form to upload a configuration file (in XML) to the FB2700 - also on the page is a link "Download/save config" that will download the current configuration in XML format.

3.5. Configuration using XML

3.5.1. Introduction to XML

An XML file is a text file (i.e. contains human-readable characters only) with formally defined structure and content. An XML file starts with the line :-

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>
```

This defines the version of XML that the file complies with and the character encoding in use. UTF-8 is used everywhere by the FireBrick.

The XML file contains one or more *elements*, which may be nested into a hierarchy.

Note

In XML, the configuration objects are represented by *elements*, so the terms object and element are used interchangeably in this manual.

Each element consists of some optional content, bounded by two *tags* - a *start tag* AND an *end tag*.

A start tag consists of the following sequence of characters:-

- a < character
- the element name
- optionally, a number of *attributes*
- a > character

An end tag consists of the following sequence of characters:-

- a < character
- a / character
- the element name
- a > character

If an element needs no content, it can be represented with a more compact *self closing tag*. A self closing tag is the same as a start tag but ends with /> and then has no content or end tag.

Since the <, > and " characters have special meaning, there are special ('escape') character sequences starting with the ampersand character that are used to represent these characters. They are :-

Table 3.1. Special character sequences

Sequence	Character represented
<	<
>	>
"	"
&	&

Note that since the ampersand character has special meaning, it too has an escape character sequence.

Attributes are written in the form : name="value" or name='value'. Multiple attributes are separated by white-space (spaces and line breaks).

Generally, the content of an element can be other *child* elements or text. However, the FB2700 doesn't use text content in elements - all configuration data is specified via attributes. Therefore you will see that elements only contain one or more child elements, or no content at all. Whilst there is generally not any text between the tags, white space is normally used to make the layout clear.

3.5.2. The root element - <config>

At the top level, an XML file normally only has one element (the *root* element), which contains the entire element hierarchy. In the FB2700 the root element is <config>, and it contains 'top-level' configuration elements that cover major areas of the configuration, such as overall system settings, interface definitions, firewall *rule sets* etc.

In addition to this User Manual, there is reference material is available that documents the XML elements - refer to Section 3.2.1.

3.5.3. Viewing or editing XML

The XML representation of the configuration can be viewed and edited (in text form) via the web interface by clicking on "XML View" and "XML Edit" respectively under the main-menu "Config" item. Viewing the configuration is, as you might expect, 'read-only', and so is 'safe' in as much as you can't accidentally change the configuration.

3.5.4. Example XML configuration

An example of a simple, but complete XML configuration is shown below, with annotations pointing out the main elements

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<config xmlns="http://firebrick.ltd.uk/xml/fb2700/"
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:schemaLocation="http://firebrick.ltd.uk/xml/fb2700/ ...
        timestamp="2011-10-14T12:24:07Z"
        patch="8882">

  <system name="gateway"                                ❶
    contact="Peter Smith"
    location="The Basement"
    log-panic="fb-support">
  </system>

  <user name="peter"                                   ❷
    full-name="Peter Smith"
    password="FB105#4D42454D26F8BF5480F07DFA1E41AE47410154F6"
    timeout="PT3H20M"
    config="full"
    level="DEBUG"/>

  <log name="default"                                  ❸
  <log name="fb-support">
    <email to="crashlog@firebrick.ltd.uk"
      comment="Crash logs emailed to FireBrick Support"/>
  </log>

  <services>                                          ❹
    <ntp timeserver="pool.ntp.org"/>
    <telnet log="default"/>
    <http />
    <dns domain="watchfront.co.uk"
      resolvers="81.187.42.42 81.187.96.96"/>
  </services>
```

```

<port name="WAN"                                ❶
  ports="1"/>
<port name="LAN"
  ports="2"/>

<interface name="WAN"
  port="WAN">
  <subnet name="ADSL"
    ip="81.187.106.73/30"/>
</interface>

<interface name="LAN"                            ❷
  port="LAN">
  <subnet name="LAN"
    ip="81.187.96.94/28"/>
  <dhcp name="LAN"
    ip="81.187.96.88-92"
    log="default"/>
</interface>

<rule-set name="filters"                        ❸
  no-match-action="drop">
  <rule name="Our-Traffic"
    source-interface="self"
    comment="FB originated traffic allowed"/>
  <rule name="FireBrick UI"
    target-port="80"
    target-interface="self"
    protocol="6"/>
  <rule name="ICMP"
    protocol="1"
    log="default"/>
  <rule name="All outgoing"
    source-interface="LAN"/>
  <rule name="FB-access"
    source-interface="LAN"
    target-port="80"
    target-interface="self"
    protocol="6"
    comment="FB web config access"/>
  <rule name="final-no-match"
    log="default"
    action="drop"
    comment="Catch all - sets default logging for no match"/>
</rule-set>
</config>

```

- ❶ sets some general system parameters (see Section 4.2)
- ❷ defines a single user with the highest level of access (DEBUG) (see Section 4.1)
- ❸ defines a log target (see Chapter 5)
- ❹ configures key system services (see Chapter 14)
- ❺ defines physical-port group (see Section 6.1)

- ⑥ defines an interface, with one subnet and a DHCP allocation pool (see Chapter 6)
- ⑦ defines a set of firewalling rules (see Chapter 7)

3.6. Downloading/Uploading the configuration

The XML file may be retrieved from the FireBrick, or uploaded to the FireBrick using HTTP transfers done via tools such as `curl`. Using these methods, configuration of the FB2700 can be integrated with existing administrative systems.

Note

Linebreaks are shown in the examples below for clarity only - they must not be entered on the command-line

3.6.1. Download

To download the configuration from the FB2700 you need to perform an HTTP GET of the following URL :-

```
http://<FB2700 IP address or DNS name>/config/config
```

An example of doing this using `curl`, run on a Linux box is shown below :-

```
curl http://<FB2700 IP address or DNS name>/config/config
--user "username:password" --output "filename"
```

Replace *username* and *password* with appropriate credentials.

The XML configuration file will be stored in the file specified by *filename* - you can choose any file extension you wish (or none at all), but we suggest that you use `.xml` for consistency with the file extension used when saving a configuration via the User Interface (see Section 3.4.4).

3.6.2. Upload

To upload the configuration to the FB2700 you need to send the configuration XML file as if posted by a web form, using encoding MIME type `multi-part/form-data`.

An example of doing this using `curl`, run on a Linux box is shown below :-

```
curl http://<FB2700 IP address or DNS name>/config/config
--user "username:password" --form config="@filename"
```

3.1. IP address groups

An IP address group is a named definition of a range of IP addresses, which can be referenced in many places where you would otherwise explicitly specify such ranges. This allows you to specify commonly occurring ranges (for example a trusted group of addresses) in one place, which aids maintainability, and then reference them by name, which speeds configuration and aids readability.

An IP address group is defined using an `ip-group` top-level object - in the web user interface, click on the "IP group" category icon to create and edit these objects.

Chapter 4. System Administration

4.1. User Management

You will have created your first user as part of the initial setup of your FB2700, as detailed in either the QuickStart Guide or in Chapter 2 in this manual.

To create, edit or delete users, browse to the config pages by clicking the "Edit" item in the sub-menu under the "Config" main-menu item, then click on the "Users" category icon. Click on the "Edit" link adjacent to the user you wish to edit, or click on the "Add" link to add a user.

To delete a user, click the appropriate "Edit" link, then click the "Erase" button in the navigation controls - see Figure 3.8. As with any such object erase operation, the object will not actually be erased until the configuration is saved.

Once you have added a new user, or are editing an existing user, the object editing page will appear, as shown in Figure 4.1 :-

Figure 4.1. Setting up a new user

Admin users :: user 1 of 1



User names, passwords and abilities for admin users

name <i>User name</i> reginald	<input type="checkbox"/> comment <i>Comment</i>	profile <i>Profile name</i> None
password <i>User password</i> ●●●●●●	<input type="checkbox"/> full-name <i>Full name</i>	<input type="checkbox"/> otp <i>OTP serial number</i>
<input type="checkbox"/> timeout <i>Login idle timeout</i> PT5M	<input type="checkbox"/> config <i>Config access level</i> full	<input type="checkbox"/> level <i>Login level</i> ADMIN
<input type="checkbox"/> allow <i>Restrict logins to be from specific IP addresses</i>		

The minimum attributes that must be specified are name, which is the username that you type in when logging in, and password - passwords are mandatory on the FB2700.

You can optionally provide a *full name* for the specified username, and a general comment field value.

4.1.1. Login level

A user's *login level* is set with the `level` attribute, and determines what CLI commands the user can run. The default, if the `level` attribute is not specified, is `ADMIN` - you may wish to downgrade the level for users who are not classed as 'system administrators'.

Table 4.1. User login levels

Level	Description
NOBODY	Unknown or not logged in user
GUEST	Guest user
USER	Normal unprivileged user
ADMIN	System administrator
DEBUG	System debugging user

4.1.2. Configuration access level

The *configuration access level* determines whether a user has read-only or read-write access to the configuration, as shown in Table 4.2 below. This mechanism can also be used to deny all access to the configuration using the `none` level, without actually deleting the user definition.

This setting is distinct from, and not connected with, the *login level* described above. You can use the access level to define, for example, whether a `USER` login-level user can modify the configuration. Typically an `ADMIN` (or `DEBUG`) login-level user would always be granted full access, so for `ADMIN` or `DEBUG` level user's, the default of `full` is suitable.

Table 4.2. Configuration access levels

Level	Description
<code>none</code>	No access unless explicitly listed
<code>view</code>	View only access (no passwords)
<code>read</code>	Read only access (with passwords)
<code>full</code>	Full view and edit access - DEFAULT

4.1.3. Login idle timeout

To improve security, login sessions to either the web user interface, or to the command-line interface (via telnet, see Chapter 21), will time-out after a period of inactivity. This idle time-out defaults to 5 minutes, and can be changed by setting the `timeout` attribute value.

The time-out value is specified using the syntax for the XML *fb:duration* data type. The syntax is hours, minutes and seconds, or minutes and seconds or just seconds. E.g. `5:00`.

To set a user's time-out in the user interface, tick the checkbox next to `timeout`, and enter a value in the format described above.

Setting a timeout to 0 means *unlimited* and should obviously be used with care.

4.1.4. Restricting user logins

4.1.4.1. Restrict by IP address

You can restrict logins by a given user to be allowed only from specific IP addresses, using the `allow` attribute. This restriction is per-user, and is distinct from, and applies in addition to, any restrictions specified on either the

web or telnet (for command line interface access) services (see Section 14.2 and Section 14.3), or any firewall rules that affect web or telnet access to the FB2700 itself.

4.1.4.2. Restrict by profile

By specifying a profile name using the `profile` attribute, you can allow logins by the user only when the profile is in the Active state (see Chapter 9). You can use this to, for example, restrict logins to be allowed only during certain times of the day, or you can effectively suspend a user account by specifying an always-Inactive profile.

4.2. General System settings

The `system` top-level object can specify attributes that control general, global system settings. The available attributes are described in the following sections, and can be configured in the User Interface by choosing the "Setup" category, then clicking the "Edit" link under the heading "System settings".

The software auto upgrade process is controlled by `system` objects attributes - these are described in Section 4.3.3.2.

4.2.1. System name (hostname)

The system name, also called the *hostname*, is used in various aspects of the FB2700's functions, and so we recommend you set the hostname to something appropriate for your network.

The hostname is set using the `name` attribute.

4.2.2. Administrative details

The attributes shown in Table 4.3 allow you to specify general administrative details about the unit :-

Table 4.3. General administrative details attributes

Attribute	Purpose
<code>comment</code>	General comment field
<code>contact</code>	Contact name
<code>intro</code>	Text that appears on the 'home' page - the home page is the first page you see after logging in to the FB2700. This text is also displayed immediately after you login to a command-line session.
<code>location</code>	Physical location description

4.2.3. System-level event logging control

The `log` and `log-` . . . attributes control logging of events related to the operation of the system itself. For details on event logging, please refer to Chapter 5, and for details on the logging control attributes on `system` object, please refer to Section 5.7.

4.2.4. Home page web links

The home page is the first page you see after logging in to the FB2700, or when you click the Home main-menu item. The home page displays the system name, and, if defined, the text specified by the `intro` attribute on the `system` object.

Additionally, you can define one or more web links to appear on the home page. These are defined using `link` objects, which are child objects of the `system` object.

To make a usable link, you must specify the following two attributes on the `link` object :-

- `text` : the text displayed as a hyperlink
- `url` : link destination URL

Additionally, you can name a link, specify a comment, and make the presence of the link on the home page conditional on a profile.

4.3. Software Upgrades

FB2700 users benefit from FireBrick's pro-active software development process, which delivers fast fixes of important bugs, and implementation of many customer enhancement requests and suggestions for improvement. As a matter of policy, FireBrick software upgrades are always free to download for all FireBrick customers.

To complement the responsive UK-based development process, the FB2700 is capable of downloading and installing new software *directly from Firebrick's servers*, providing the unit has Internet access.

This Internet-based upgrade process can be initiated manually (refer to Section 4.3.3.1), or the FB2700 can download and install new software automatically, without user intervention.

If the unit you want to upgrade does not have Internet access, then new software can be uploaded to the unit via a web browser instead - see Section 4.3.4.

Caution

Software upgrades are best done using the Internet-based upgrade process if possible - this ensures the changes introduced by *Breakpoint* releases are automatically accounted for (see Section 4.3.1.1)

Software upgrades will trigger an automatic reboot of your FB2700 - this will cause an outage in routing, and can cause connections that are using NAT to drop. However, the FB2700 reboots very quickly, and in many cases, users will be generally unaware of the event. You can also use a profile to restrict when software upgrades may occur - for example, you could ensure they are always done over night.

4.3.1. Software release types

There are three types of software release : factory, beta and alpha. For full details on the differences between these software releases, refer to the FB2700 software downloads website [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/software.php?PRODUCT=2700>] - please follow the 'read the instructions' link that you will find just above the list of software versions.

Note

In order to be able to run alpha releases, your FB2700 must be enabled to run alpha software - this is done by changing the entry in the FireBrick capabilities database (hosted on FireBrick company servers) for your specific FB2700, as identified by the unit's Serial Number. Normally your FB2700 will be running factory or possibly beta software, with alpha software only used under advice and guidance of support personnel while investigating/fixing possible bugs or performance issues. You can see whether your FB2700 is able to run alpha releases by viewing the main Status page (click the Status main menu-item), and look for the row labelled "Allowed" - if the text shows "Alpha builds (for testing)" then your FB2700 can run alpha releases.

4.3.1.1. Breakpoint releases

Occasionally, a software release will introduce a change to the object model that means the way specific functionality is configured in XML also changes - for example an attribute may have been deprecated, and a replacement attribute should be used instead. A release where such a change has been made, and existing configurations will need modifying, are termed *Breakpoint* software releases.

Breakpoint releases are special as they are able to automatically update an existing configuration - used with the *previous* software release - so that it is compatible with the new release, and functionality is retained wherever possible.

When using the Internet-based upgrade process, the FB2700 will always upgrade to the next available breakpoint version first, so that the configuration is updated appropriately. If your current software version is several breakpoint releases behind the latest version, the upgrade process will be repeated for each breakpoint release, and then to the latest version if that is later than the latest breakpoint release.

On the FB2700 software downloads website, breakpoint releases are labelled [Breakpoint] immediately under the version number.

Note

If you have saved copies of configurations for back-up purposes, always re-save a copy after upgrading to a breakpoint issue. If you use automated methods to configure your FB2700, check documentation to see whether those methods need updating.

4.3.2. Identifying current software version

The current software version is displayed on the main Status page, shown when you click the Status main menu-item itself (i.e. not a submenu item). The main software application version is shown next to the word "Software", e.g. :-

```
Software      FB2700 Hermia (V1.07.001 2011-11-15T10:22:48)
```

The software version is also displayed in the right hand side of the 'footer' area of each web page, and is shown immediately after you login to a command-line session.

4.3.3. Internet-based upgrade process

Note

'Out of the box' the FB2700 is configured to automatically download and install new *factory* releases. This is a safe option, and we expect many users to be happy with this - however, if you would prefer, this process can be disabled - refer to Section 4.3.3.2.

If automatic installs are allowed, the FB2700 will check for new software on boot up and approximately every 24 hours thereafter - your FB2700 should therefore pick up new software at most ~ 24 hours after it is released. You can choose to allow this process to install only new factory-releases, factory or beta releases, or any release, which then includes *alpha* releases (if your FB2700 is enabled for alpha software - see Section 4.3.1) - refer to Section 4.3.3.2 for details on how to configure auto upgrades.

4.3.3.1. Manually initiating upgrades

Whenever you browse to the main Status page, the FB2700 checks whether there is newer software available, given the current software version in use, and whether alpha releases are allowed. If new software is available, you will be informed of this as shown in Figure 4.2 :-

Figure 4.2. Software upgrade available notification

```
Upgrade      This FireBrick automatically upgrades to new factory releases
Software upgrade: Upgrade available
```

To see what new software is available, click on the "Upgrade available" link. This will take you to a page that will show *Release notes* that are applicable given your current software version, and the latest version available. On that page there is an "Upgrade" button which will begin the software upgrade process.

4.3.3.2. Controlling automatic software updates

There are two attributes on the `system` object (see Section 4.2) that affect the automatic software upgrade process :-

Table 4.4. Attributes controlling auto-upgrades

Attribute	Description
<code>sw-update</code>	<p>Controls what types of software releases the auto-upgrade process will download/install. This attribute can also be used to disable the auto-upgrade process - use the value of <code>false</code> to achieve this.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>false</code> : Disables auto upgrades <code>factory</code> : Only download/install factory releases - this is the default if the attribute is not specified <code>beta</code> : Download/install factory or beta releases <code>alpha</code> : Download/install factory, beta or alpha releases
<code>sw-update-profile</code>	Specifies the name of a profile to use to control when software upgrades are attempted (see Chapter 9 for details on profiles).

The current setting of `sw-update` (in descriptive form) can be seen on the main Status page, adjacent to the word "Upgrade", as shown in Figure 4.2 (in that example, `sw-update` is set to, or is defaulting to, `factory`).

4.3.4. Manual upgrade

This method is entirely manual, in the sense that the brick itself does not download new software from the FireBrick servers, and responsibility for loading breakpoint releases as required lies with the user.

In order to do this, you will first need to download the required software image file (which has the file extension `.img`) from the FB2700 software downloads website [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/software.php?PRODUCT=2700>] onto your PC.

The next step is the same as you would perform when manually-initiating an Internet-based upgrade i.e. you should browse to the main Status page, where, if there is new software is available, you will be informed of this as shown in Figure 4.2.

This step is necessary since the manual upgrade feature currently shares the page used for Internet-based manual upgrades, which is reached by clicking "Upgrade available" link. After clicking this link, you will find the manual upgrade method at the bottom of the page, as shown in Figure 4.3 :-

Figure 4.3. Manual Software upload

Manual software upload

Use this to upgrade software for the boot loader or main application as required. Tick the box to force a reboot once new software is loaded.

4.4. Boot Process

The FB2700 contains internal Flash memory storage that holds two types of software :-

- main application software (generally referred to as the *app*)
- a bootloader - runs immediately on power-up, initialises system, and then loads the app

It is possible for only one of these types of software, or neither of them, to be present in the Flash, but when shipped from the factory the unit will contain a bootloader and the latest factory-release application software. The FB2700 can store multiple app software images in the Flash, and this is used with an automatic fall-back mechanism - if a new software image proves unreliable, it is 'demoted', and the unit falls back to running older software. The `show flash contents` CLI command can be used to see what is stored in the Flash - see Appendix H.

4.4.1. LED indications

4.4.1.1. Power LED status indications

The green power LED has three defined states, as shown in Table 4.5 below :-

Table 4.5. Power LED status indications

Indication	Status
Off	No AC power applied to unit (or possibly hardware fault)
Flashing with approximately 1 second period	Bootloader running / waiting for network connection
On	Main application software running

After power-up, the normal power LED indication sequence is therefore to go through the ~1 second period flashing phase, and then - if at least one Ethernet port is connected to an active device - change to solid once the app is running.

From power-up, a FB2700 will normally boot and be operational in *under five seconds*.

4.4.1.2. Port LEDs

Whilst the bootloader is waiting for an active Ethernet connection, the green and yellow LEDs built into the physical port connectors flash in a continual left-to-right then right-to-left sequence. The port LEDs on the panel on the opposite side to the physical ports also flash, in a clock-wise sequence.

Note

The same port LED flashing sequences are observed if the app is running and none of the Ethernet ports are connected to an active link-partner. Note that the app continues to run, and the power LED will still be on solid.

When connected to an active link-partner, these flashing sequences will stop and the port LEDs will start indicating physical port status, with various status indications possible, controllable via the configuration (see Section 6.4).

Chapter 5. Event Logging

5.1. Overview

Many *events* in the operation of the FireBrick create a log entry. These are a one-line string of text saying what happened. This could be normal events such as someone logging in to the web interface, or unusual events such as a wrong password used, or DHCP not being able to find any free addresses to allocate.

5.1.1. Log targets

A *log target* is a named destination (initially internal to the FB2700) for log entries - you can have multiple log targets set up which you can use to separate out log event messages according to some criteria - for example, you could log all firewalling related log events to a log target specifically for that purpose. This makes it easier to locate events you are looking for, and helps you keep each log target uncluttered with un-related log events - this is particularly important when when you are logging a lot of things very quickly.

A log target is defined using a `log` top-level object - when using the web User Interface, these objects are in the "Setup" category, under the heading "Log target controls".

Every log entry is put in a buffer in RAM, which only holds a certain number of log entries (typically around 1MB of text) - once the buffer is full, the oldest entries are lost as new ones arrive. Since the buffer is stored in volatile memory (RAM), buffer contents are lost on reboot or power failure.

This buffer can be viewed via the web interface or command line which can show the history in the buffer and then *follow the log* in real time (even when viewing via a web browser, with some exceptions - see Section 5.6.1).

In some cases it is essential to ensure logged events can be viewed even after a power failure. You can flag a log target to log to the non-volatile Flash memory within the FB2700, where it will remain stored even after a power failure. You should read Section 5.5 before deciding to log events to Flash memory.

Each log target has various attributes and child objects defining what happens to log entries to this target. However, in the simplest case, where you do not require non-volatile storage, or external logging (see Section 5.3), the log object will only need a name attribute, and will have no child objects. In XML this will look something like :-

```
<log name="my_log" />
```

5.1.1.1. Logging to Flash memory

The internal Flash memory logging system is separate from the external logging. It applies if the log target object has `flash="true"`. It causes each log entry to be written to the internal non-volatile Flash log as it is created.

The flash log is intended for urgent permanent system information only, and is visible using the `show flash log` CLI command (see Appendix H for details on using this command. Chapter 21 covers the CLI in general.

Caution

Flash logging slows down the system considerably - only enable Flash logging where absolutely necessary.

The flash log does have a limit on how much it can hold, but it is many thousands of entries so this is rarely an issue. Oldest entries are automatically discarded when there is no space.

5.1.1.2. Logging to the Console

The *console* is the command line environment described in Chapter 21. You can cause log entries to be displayed as soon as possible on the console (assuming an active console session) by setting `console="true"` on the log target.

You can stop the console logging with `troff` command or restart it with `tron` command.

5.2. Enabling logging

Event logging is enabled by setting one of the attributes shown in Table 5.1 on the appropriate object(s) in the configuration, which depends on what event(s) you are interested in. The attribute value specifies the name of the log target to send the event message to. The events that cause a log entry will naturally depend on the object on which you enable logging. Some objects have additional attributes such as `log-error` for unusual events, and `log-debug` for extra detail.

Table 5.1. Logging attributes

Attribute	Event types
<code>log</code>	This is normal events. Note that if <code>log-error</code> is not set then this includes errors.
<code>log-errors</code>	This is when things happen that should not. It could be something as simple as bad login on telnet. Note that if <code>log-errors</code> is not set but <code>log</code> is set then errors are logged to the <i>log</i> target by default.
<code>log-debug</code>	This is extra detail and is normally only used when diagnosing a problem. Debug logging can be a lot of information, for example, in some cases whole packets are logged (e.g. PPP). It is generally best only to use debug logging when needed.

5.3. Logging to external destinations

Entries in the buffer can also be sent on to external destinations, such as via email or *syslog*. Support for sending a text message via SMS (using a suitable dongle attached to the USB port), triggering SNMP traps and logging to a USB memory stick may be provided in a future software release.

You can set these differently for each log target. There is inevitably a slight lag between the event happening and the log message being sent on, and in some cases, such as email, you can deliberately delay the sending of logs to avoid getting an excessive number of emails.

If an external logging system cannot keep up with the rate logs are generated then log entries can be lost. The fastest type of external logging is using *syslog* which should manage to keep up in pretty much all cases.

5.3.1. Syslog

The FB2700 supports sending of log entries across a network to a *syslog server*. Syslog is described in RFC5424 [<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5424>], and the FB2700 includes microsecond resolution time stamps, the hostname (from system settings) and a module name in entries sent via syslog. Syslog logging is very quick as there is no reply, and syslog servers can be easily setup on most operating systems, particularly Unix-like systems such as Linux.

Note

Older syslog servers will typically show time and hostname twice, and will need upgrading.

The module name refers to which part of the system caused the log entry, and is also shown in all other types of logging such as web and console.

To enable log messages to be sent to a syslog server, you need to create a `syslog` object that is a child of the log target (`log`) object. You must then specify the DNS name or IP address of your syslog server by setting the `server` attribute on the `syslog` object. You can also set the *facility* and/or *severity* values using these attributes :-

- `facility`: the 'facility' to be used in the syslog messages - when syslog entries are generated by subsystems or processes in a general-purpose operating system, the facility typically identifies the message source ; where the commonly used facility identifiers are not suitable, the "local0" thru "local7" identifiers can be used. If the `facility` attribute is not set, it defaults to LOCAL0
- `severity`: the severity value to be used in the syslog messages - if not set, the severity defaults to NOTICE

The FB2700 normally uses the 'standard' syslog port number of 514, but if necessary, you can change this by setting the `port` attribute value.

5.3.2. Email

You can cause logs to be sent by e-mail by creating an `email` object that is a child of the log target (`log`) object.

An important aspect of emailed logs is that they have a *delay* and a *hold-off*. The delay means that the email is not sent immediately because often a cluster of events happen over a short period and it is sensible to wait for several log lines for an event before e-mailing.

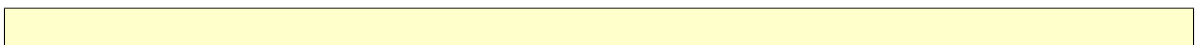
The hold-off period is the time that the FB2700 waits after sending an e-mail, before sending another. Having a hold-off period means you don't get an excessive number of e-mails ; since the logging system is initially storing event messages in RAM, the e-mail that is sent after the hold-off period will contain any messages that were generated during the hold-off period.

Both of these periods are specified as an XML Period value - refer to Section 4.1.3 for details on the required syntax.

The following aspects of the e-mail process can be configured :-

- `subject` : you can either specify the subject, by setting the `subject` attribute value, or you can allow the FB2700 to create a subject based on the first line of the log message
- `e-mail addresses` : as to be expected, you must specify a target e-mail address, using the `to` attribute. You can optionally specify a From: address, by setting the `from` attribute, or you can allow the FB2700 to create an address based on the unit's serial number
- `outgoing mail server` : the FB2700 normally sends e-mail directly to the Mail eXchanger (MX) host for the domain, but you can optionally specify an outgoing mail server ('smart host') to use instead, by setting the `server` attribute
- `SMTP port number` : the FB2700 defaults to using TCP port 25 to perform the SMTP mail transfer, but if necessary you can set the `port` attribute to specify which port number to use
- `retry delay` : if an attempt to send the e-mail fails, the FB2700 will wait before re-trying ; the default wait period is 10 minutes, but you can change this by setting the `retry` attribute

An example of a simple log target with e-mailing is available in a factory reset configuration - the associated XML is shown below, from which you can see that in many cases, you only need to specify the `to` attribute (the `comment` attribute is an optional, general comment field) :-




```
<log name="fb-support"
      comment="Log target for sending logs to FireBrick support team">
  <email to="crashlog@firebrick.ltd.uk"
        comment="Crash logs emailed to FireBrick Support team"/>
</log>
```

A profile can be used to stop emails at certain times, and when the email logging is back on an active profile it tries to catch up any entries still in the RAM buffer if possible.

5.3.2.1. E-mail process logging

Since the process of e-mailing can itself encounter problems, it is possible to request that the process itself be logged via the usual log target mechanism. This is done by specifying one or more of the `log`, `log-debug` and `log-error` attributes.

Note

We recommend that you avoid setting these attributes such that specify the log-target containing the `email` object, otherwise you are likely to continually receive e-mails as each previous e-mail process log will trigger another e-mail - the hold-off will limit the rate of these mails though.

5.4. Factory reset configuration log targets

A factory reset configuration has a log target named `default`, which only logs to RAM. Provided this log target has not been deleted, you can therefore simply set `log="default"` on any appropriate object to immediately enable logging to this 'default' log target, which can then be viewed from the web User Interface or via the CLI.

A factory reset configuration also has a log target named `fb-support` which is referenced by the `log-panic` attribute of the `system` object (see Section 5.7). This allows the FireBrick to automatically email the support team if there is a panic (crash) - you can, of course, change or delete this if you prefer.

Caution

Please only set things to log to `fb-support` if requested by support staff.

5.5. Performance

The FireBrick can log a lot of information, and adding logs can causes things to slow down a little. The controls in the config allow you to say what you log in some detail. However, logging to flash will always slow things down a lot and should only be used where absolutely necessary.

5.6. Viewing logs

5.6.1. Viewing logs in the User Interface

To view a log in the web User Interface, select the "Log" item in the "Status" menu. Then select which log target to view by clicking the appropriate link. You can also view a 'pseudo' log target "All" which shows log event messages sent to any log target.

The web page then continues showing log events on the web page in *real time i.e. as they happen*.

Note

This is an "open ended" web page which has been known to upset some browsers, but this is rare. However it does not usually work with any sort of web proxy which expects the page to actually finish.

All log targets can be viewed via the web User Interface, regardless of whether they specify any external logging (or logging to Flash memory).

5.6.2. Viewing logs in the CLI environment

The command line allows logs to be viewed, and you can select which log target, or all targets. The logging continues on screen until you press a key such as RETURN.

In addition, anything set to log to console shows anyway (see Section 5.1.1.2), unless disabled with the `trouff` command.

5.7. System-event logging

Some aspects of the operation of the overall system have associated events and messages that can be logged. Logging of such events is enabled via the `system` object attributes shown in Table 5.2 below :-

Table 5.2. System-Event Logging attributes

<code>system</code> object attribute	Event types
<code>log</code>	General system events.
<code>log-debug</code>	System debug messages.
<code>log-error</code>	System error messages.
<code>log-eth</code>	General Ethernet hardware messages.
<code>log-eth-debug</code>	Ethernet hardware debug messages.
<code>log-eth-error</code>	Ethernet hardware error messages.
<code>log-panic</code>	System Panic events.
<code>log-stats</code>	"One second stats" messages

Specifying system event logging attributes is usually only necessary when diagnosing problems with the FB2700, and will typically be done under guidance from support staff. For example, `log-stats` causes a log message to be generated *every second* containing some key system statistics and state information, which are useful for debugging.

Note that there are some system events, such as startup and shutdown, which are always logged to all log targets, and to the console and flash by default, regardless of these logging attributes.

5.8. Using Profiles

The log target itself does not have a profile, but each of the external logging entries can have a profile. Some types of logging will catch up when their profile comes back on (e.g. email) but most are immediate (such as syslog and SMS) and will drop any entries when disabled by an Inactive profile.

Chapter 6. Interfaces and Subnets

This chapter covers the setup of *Ethernet* interfaces and the definition of subnets that are present on those interfaces.

For information about other types of 'interfaces', refer to the following chapters :-

- Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) - Chapter 11
- Tunnels, including FB105 tunnels - Chapter 12
- 3G mobile data connection via a USB dongle - Chapter 13

6.1. Relationship between Interfaces and Physical Ports

The FB2700 features four Gigabit Ethernet (1Gb/s) ports that can also operate at 10Mb/s and 100Mb/s speeds. Auto-negotiation of link speed is enabled by default, so when connected to auto-negotiation capable equipment, the ports operate at the highest speed that both ends of the link can run at. In some situations, auto-negotiation is not supported by connected equipment, and so the FB2700 provides control of port behaviour to allow the port to work with such equipment.

Each port features a green and amber LED, the functions of which can be chosen from a range of options indicating link speed and/or traffic activity.

The exact function of the ports is flexible, and controlled by the configuration of the FB2700.

6.1.1. Port groups

Up to four port groups can be defined, with each group comprising a set of one or more physical ports that doesn't overlap with any other group. The ports within the group work as a conventional Ethernet switch, directly transferring traffic at wire-speed that is destined for a MAC address that is present on one of the other ports in the group.

6.1.2. Interfaces

In the FB2700, an *interface* is a logical equivalent of a physical Ethernet interface adapter. Each interface normally exists in a distinct *broadcast domain*, and is associated with at most one port group. It is referred to as a logical interface, since Virtual LAN (VLAN) support allows multiple logical interfaces to be implemented on one physical port group. If you are unfamiliar with VLANs or the concept of broadcast domains, Appendix D contains a brief overview.

Table 6.1 shows the logical to physical associations that are possible :-

Table 6.1. Physical port usage options

Association	Notes
A single physical port ^a implements one interface	VLANs are not in use on the port, and so only untagged packets are present.
A user-defined group of physical ports implements one interface	The ports in the group work as a conventional Layer 2 Ethernet switch, directly transferring traffic at wire-speed that is destined for a MAC address that is present on one of the other ports in the group.

	<p>The interface is associated with an internal (to the FB2700) port in this switch-port group, thus :-</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • packets arriving at any of the ports in the group and destined for a MAC address belonging to the FB2700 will be received by the associated interface • packets being sent out of the interface will be forwarded to the appropriate physical port based on normal MAC learning
A single physical port implements multiple interfaces	VLANs are in use on the port - each logical interface is specified with a different VLAN ID, the port receives (and sends) tagged packets, the tag is removed and the packet is processed as arriving on the interface with matching VLAN ID
A user-defined group of physical ports implements multiple interfaces	**TBC would this ever be done?***

^aThis is actually a port group, but with only a single member.

From Table 6.1 it will be apparent that, when not using VLANs, a maximum of four interfaces can be defined - one interface per physical port. When using VLANs, the number of interfaces is ultimately limited to the smaller of 4096 (as a result of the VLAN tag size of 12-bits) or the number of MAC addresses available for use by a specific FB2700 (see Appendix C).

By combining the FB2700 with a VLAN capable switch, using only a single physical connection between the switch and the FB2700, you can effectively expand the number of distinct physical interfaces, with the upper limit on number being determined by switch capabilities, or by inherent IEEE 802.1Q VLAN or FB2700 MAC address block size. An example of such a configuration is a multi-tenant serviced-office environment, where the FB2700 acts as an Internet access router for a number of tenants, firewalling between tenant networks, and maybe providing access to shared resources such as printers.

6.2. Defining port groups

Port groups come under the Interface category in the top-level icons. Under the section headed "Port grouping and naming", you will see the list of existing port groups - port group objects (`port`) are top-level objects. If there are less than four groups already defined, an Add link will be present.

Each group is given a user-defined name, which is used to refer to the group in any interface definitions.

To create a new group, click on the Add link to take you to a simple page where you specify the name of the group, and select one or more physical ports to belong to the group. To select more than one physical port, hold down the Ctrl key whilst clicking on a port number to toggle it between selected and unselected. An optional comment can also be specified for the group, which may be useful to act as a memory jogger for the purpose of the port group.

Editing an existing group works similarly - click the Edit link next to the group you want to modify.

The example XML below shows three port groups :-

```
<config ...>
...
<port name="WAN"
      ports="1" />
<port name="ADMIN"
      ports="2" />
```

```
<port name="LAN"
      ports="3 4"/>
...
</config>
```

In this example, "WAN" and "ADMIN" groups consists of a single port each, physical ports 1 and 2 respectively. The "LAN" group consists of two physical ports, numbers 3 and 4. Ports 3 and 4 are members of a single layer 2 broadcast domain, and are equivalent in function in terms of communication between the FB2700 and another device.

6.3. Defining an interface

To create or edit interfaces, select the Interface category in the top-level icons - under the section headed "Ethernet interface (port-group/vlan) and subnets", you will see the list of existing interface top-level objects (if any), and an "Add" link.

The primary attributes that define an interface are the name of the physical port group it uses, an optional VLAN ID, and an optional name. If the VLAN ID is not specified, it defaults to "0" which means only *untagged* packets will be received by the interface.

To create a new interface, click on the Add link to take you to a new interface definition. Tick the `port` checkbox and select one of the defined port groups. If the interface is to exist in a VLAN, tick the `vlan` checkbox and enter the VLAN ID in the text field.

Editing an existing interface works similarly - click the Edit link next to the interface you want to modify.

An interface object can have the following child objects :-

- One or more subnet definition objects
- Zero or more DHCP server settings objects
- Zero or more Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) settings objects (refer to Chapter 16)

6.3.1. Defining subnets

Each interface can have one *or more* subnets definitions associated with it. The ability to specify multiple subnets on an interface can be used where it is necessary to communicate with devices on two different subnets and it is acceptable that the subnets exist in the same broadcast domain. For example, it may not be possible to reassign machine addresses to form a single subnet, but the machines do not require firewalling from each other.

Note

As discussed in Section 6.1, an interface is associated with a broadcast domain ; therefore multiple subnets existing in a single broadcast domain are not 'isolated' (at layer 2) from each other. Effective firewalling (at layer 3) cannot be established between such subnets ; to achieve that, subnets need to exist in different broadcast domains, and thus be on different interfaces. An example of this is seen in the factory default configuration, which has two interfaces, "WAN" and "LAN", allowing firewalling of the LAN from the Internet.

You may also have both IPv4 and IPv6 subnets on an interface where you are also using IPv6 networking.

The primary attributes that define a subnet are the IP address range of the subnet, the IP address of the FB2700 itself on that subnet, and an optional name.

The IP address and address-range are expressed together using *CIDR notation* - if you are not familiar with this notation, please refer to Appendix B for an overview.

To create or edit subnets, select the Interface category in the top-level icons, then click Edit next to the appropriate interface - under the section headed "IP subnet on the interface", you will see the list of existing subnet child objects (if any), and an "Add" link.

Note

In a factory reset configuration, there are two temporary subnets defined on the "LAN" interface : 2001:DB8::1/64 and 10.0.0.1/24. These subnet definitions provide a default IP address that the FB2700 can initially be accessed on, regardless of whether the FB2700 has been able to obtain an address from an existing DHCP server on the network. Once you have added new subnets to suit your requirements, and tested that they work as expected, these temporary definitions should be removed.

To create a new subnet, click on the Add link to take you to a new `subnet` object definition. Tick the `ip` checkbox, and enter the appropriate CIDR notation.

Editing an existing subnet works similarly - click the Edit link next to the subnet you want to modify.

The FB2700 can perform conventional Network Address Translation (NAT) for network connections / flows originating from all machines on a subnet (for example, one using RFC1918 private IP address space) by setting the `nat` attribute on the `subnet` object.

Tip

Behind the scenes, activation of NAT is on a 'per-session' basis, and the `nat` attribute on a subnet is really a shortcut for a session-rule using the `set-nat` attribute. If you wish to learn more about sessions and session-tracking, please refer to Chapter 7. If you have any need for firewalling, you'll need to refer to that chapter in due course anyway.

6.3.1.1. Using DHCP to configure a subnet

You can create a subnet that is configured via DHCP by clearing the `ip` checkbox - the absence of an IP address/prefix specification causes the FB2700 to attempt to obtain an address from a DHCP server (which must be in the same broadcast domain). It may help to use the Comment field to note that the subnet is configured via DHCP.

In its simplest form, a DHCP configured subnet is created by the following XML :- `<subnet />`

6.3.2. Setting up DHCP server parameters

The FB2700 can act as a DHCP server to dynamically allocate IP addresses to clients. Optionally, the allocation can be accompanied by information such as a list of DNS resolvers that the client should use.

Since the DHCP behaviour needs to be defined for each interface (specifically, each broadcast domain), the behaviour is controlled by one or more `dhcp` objects, which are children of an `interface` object.

Address allocations are made from a *pool* of addresses - the pool is either explicitly defined using the `ip` attribute, or if `ip` is not specified, it consists of all addresses on the interface i.e. from all subnets, but excluding network or broadcast addresses, or any addresses that the FB2700 has seen ARP responses for (i.e. addresses already in use, perhaps through a static address configuration on a machine).

The XML below shows an example of an explicitly-specified DHCP pool :-

```
<interface ...>
...
  <dhcp name="LAN"
```

```

        ip="172.30.16.50-80"
        log="default"/>
    ...
</interface>

```

Every allocation made by the DHCP server built-in to the FB2700 is stored in non-volatile memory, and as such will survive power-cycling and/or rebooting. The allocations can be seen using the "DHCP" item in the "Status" menu, or using the `show dhcp` CLI command.

If a client does not request renewal of the lease before it expires, the allocation entry will show "expired". Expired entries remain stored, and are used to lease the same IP address again if the same client (as identified by its MAC address) requests an IP address. However, if a new MAC address requests an allocation, and there are no available IPs (excluding expired allocations) in the allocation pool, then the oldest expired allocation IP address is re-used for the new client.

6.3.2.1. Fixed/Static DHCP allocations

'Fixed' (or 'static') allocations can be achieved by creating a separate `dhcp` object for each such allocation, and specifying the client MAC address via the `mac` attribute on the `dhcp` object.

The XML below shows an example of a fixed allocation - note the MAC address is written without any colons, and is therefore a string of twelve hexadecimal digits (48-bits). This allocation also supplies DNS resolver information to the client.

```

<interface ...>
    ...
    <dhcp name="laptop"
        ip="81.187.96.81"
        mac="0090F59E4F12"
        dns="81.187.42.42 81.187.96.96"
        log="default"/>
    ...
</interface>

```

Tip

If you are setting up a static allocation, but your client has already obtained an address (from your FB2700) from a pool, you will need to clear the allocation and then force the client to issue another DHCP request (e.g. unplug ethernet cable, do a software 'repair connection' procedure or similar etc.). See the `show dhcp` and `clear dhcp` CLI commands in the Appendix H for details on how to clear the allocation. Chapter 21 covers the CLI in general.

6.3.2.2. Partial-MAC-address based allocations

In addition to specifying a full 48-bit (12 hexadecimal character) MAC address in a `dhcp` object, it is also possible to specify part of a MAC address, specifically some number of *leading* bytes. The `dhcp` object will then apply for any client whose MAC address has the same leading bytes.

For example, as discussed in Appendix C, the first three octets (bytes) of a MAC address identify the organization (often the end product manufacturer) that can allocate that MAC address to an Ethernet device. By specifying only these first three bytes (six hexadecimal characters, no colon delimiters), in the `mac` attribute, you could ensure that all devices from the associated manufacturer are allocated addresses from a particular address pool. This is helpful if you have some common firewalling requirements for such a group of devices - for example, if all your VoIP phones are from one manufacturer - as you can have appropriate firewall rule(s) that apply to addresses in that pool.

6.4. Physical port settings

The detailed operation of each physical port can be controlled by creating `ethernet` top-level objects, one for each port that you wish to define different behaviour for vs. default behaviour.

To create a new `ethernet` object, or edit an existing object, select the Interface category from the top-level icons. Under the section headed "Ethernet port settings", you will see the list of existing `ethernet` objects (if any), and an "Add" link.

In a factory reset configuration, there are no `ethernet` objects, and all ports assume the following defaults :-

- Link auto-negotiation is enabled - both speed and duplex mode are determined via auto-negotiation, which should configure the link for highest performance possible for the given link-partner (which will need to be capable of, and participating in, auto-negotiation for this to happen)
- Auto-crossover mode is enabled - the port will swap Receive and Transmit pairs if required to adapt to cable / link-partner configuration
- The green port LED is configured to show combined Link Status and Activity indication - the LED will be off if no link is established with a link-partner. When a link is established (at any speed), the LED will be on steady when there is no activity, and will blink when there is activity.
- The yellow port LED is configured to show Transmit activity.

When you first create an `ethernet` object you will see that none of the attribute checkboxes are ticked, and the defaults described above apply. Ensure that you set the `port` attribute value correctly to modify the port you intended to.

6.4.1. Disabling auto-negotiation

If you are connecting a port to a link-partner that does not support auto-negotiation (or has it disabled), it is advisable to disable auto-negotiation on the FB2700 port. To do this, tick the checkbox for the `autoneg` attribute and select `false` from the drop-down box. You will then need to set port speed and duplex mode manually (see below) to match the link-partner settings.

6.4.2. Setting port speed

If auto-negotiation is enabled, the FB2700 port will normally advertise that it is capable of link-speeds of 10Mb/s, 100Mb/s or 1Gb/s - if you have reason to restrict the possible link-speed to *one* of these values you can set the `speed` attribute to 10M, 100M or 1G. This will cause the port to only advertise the specified speed - if the (auto-negotiate capable) link-partner does not support that speed, the link will fail to establish.

If auto-negotiation is disabled, the `speed` attribute simply sets the port's speed.

6.4.3. Setting duplex mode

If auto-negotiation is enabled, the FB2700 port will normally advertise that it is capable of either half- or full-duplex operation modes - if you have reason to restrict the operation to either of these modes, you can set the `duplex` attribute to either `half` or `full`. This will cause the port to only advertise the specified mode - if the (auto-negotiate capable) link-partner does not support that mode, the link will fail to establish.

If auto-negotiation is disabled, the `duplex` attribute simply sets the port's duplex mode.

Note

If you do not set the `autoneg` attribute (checkbox is unticked), and you set *both* port speed and duplex mode to values other than `auto`, auto-negotiation will be disabled ; this behaviour is to reduce

the potential for duplex mis-match problems that can occur when connecting the FB2700 to some vendors' (notably Cisco) equipment that has auto-negotiation disabled by default.

6.4.4. Defining port LED functions

For each port, the green and yellow port LEDs can be set to indicate any of the conditions shown in Table 6.2, by setting the values of the green and/or yellow attributes.

Table 6.2. Port LED functions

Value	Indication
Link/Activity	On when link up (any speed); blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity (<i>Default for Green LED</i>)
Link1000/Activity	On when link up at 1Gbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Link100/Activity	On when link up at 100Mbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Link10/Activity	On when link up at 10Mbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Link100-1000/Activity	On when link up at 100Mbit/s or 1Gbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Link10-1000/Activity	On when link up at 10Mbit/s or 1Gbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Link10-100/Activity	On when link up at 10Mbit/s or 100Mbit/s; blink (off) when Tx or Rx activity
Duplex/Collision	On when full-duplex; blink when half-duplex and collisions detected
Collision	Blink (on) when collisions detected
Tx	Blink (on) when Transmit activity (<i>Default for Yellow LED</i>)
Rx	Blink (on) when Receive activity
Off	Permanently off
On	Permanently on
Link	On when link up
Link1000	On when link up at 1Gbit/s
Link100	On when link up at 100Mbit/s
Link10	On when link up at 10Mbit/s
Link100-1000	On when link up at 100Mbit/s or 1Gbit/s
Link10-1000	On when link up at 10Mbit/s or 1Gbit/s
Link10-100	On when link up at 10Mbit/s or 100Mbit/s
Duplex	On when full-duplex

For example, to configure the port LEDs to show the port link speed via the pattern of the green and yellow LEDs, you could set the green attribute to Link10-1000/Activity, and the yellow attribute to Link100-1000 so that the indication is :-

Table 6.3. Example modified Port LED functions

Green	Yellow	Indication
-------	--------	------------

Interfaces and Subnets

Off	Off	Link down
On/Blinking	Off	Link up at 10Mbit/s / Tx or Rx Activity
Off	On/Blinking	Link up at 100Mbit/s / Tx or Rx Activity
On/Blinking	On/Blinking	Link up at 1Gbit/s / Tx or Rx Activity

Chapter 7. Session Handling

This chapter describes sessions, session-tracking, and how the *rules* for session creation can be used to implement Firewalling, subject specific traffic flows to traffic-shaping, and perform address mapping techniques including conventional Network Address Translation (NAT).

Session-tracking is also involved in the *route override* functionality of the FB2700 - this is covered in Section 8.5.

7.1. Routing vs. Firewalling

A network *router* is a device whose role is to forward packets entering the device out onto an appropriate physical interface, based primarily, or solely, on the *destination* IP address of the packets. Typically the source address of each packet is not considered in the forwarding decision.

A *firewall* on the other hand is a device whose primary role is to *filter* traffic based on specified criteria. Since most network communication between two end-points is bi-directional, any such filtering must correctly handle the packets flowing in *both* directions that constitute a specific end-to-end 'flow' (for connection-less protocols, such as UDP) or 'connection' (for connection-orientated protocols, such as TCP).

In practice, a firewall appliance will have to make routing decisions too.

7.2. Session Tracking

Each flow or connection is identifiable by the set of parameters that makes it unique ; two of these parameters are the network addresses of the two end-points. For protocols that support multiplexing of multiple flows or connections to/from a single network address - UDP and TCP both support this - the remaining parameters are the identifiers used to do the multiplexing. For both UDP and TCP, this identifier is a port-number, whose scope is local to the end-point, and is therefore usually different at each end-point for a given flow/connection.

Normally, only one of the two port-numbers involved will be known *a priori* - this will be the documented port-number used for a specific service at the server end (for example, port 80 for an HTTP service) ; the other is dynamically chosen from the available pool of unused port numbers at the client end.

Therefore, the filter criteria can only specify that known port-number ; the other port-number can only be determined by inspection of the IP packet payloads, discovering which protocol is being carried, and using knowledge of the protocol to extract the port-number.

This information must then be stored, and held for a duration not less than the duration that communications occur over the flow or connection. This information defines a session, and is stored in the *session-table*. *The key point of the session table entry is that it will then cause return traffic to be allowed, and sent to the correct place. Without the session table entry, the FB2700 would have no way of knowing that the return traffic is part of an allowed (by firewalling rules) session, and it would likely be dropped due to firewalling.*

The overall process of analysing packet payloads and maintaining the session-table is referred to as *session-tracking*.

Session-tracking is necessary to be able to implement firewalling using the kind of rules you might expect to specify - for example :

"allow TCP connection to port 80 on IP address 10.1.2.3, from any IP address" (note source port number not specified)

Session-tracking will therefore be present in a firewall, but not required in a router.

The contents of the session-table can be viewed in the web user interface by clicking "Sessions" in the "Status" menu. You will normally see two entries per session, one with a green background and one with a yellow background. These two 'entries' are the forward and reverse details of the session.

7.2.1. Session termination

For connection-orientated protocols such as TCP, the session-tracking is able to detect connection closure and delete the session from the session-table.

For protocols such as UDP, which will likely be carrying a higher-level protocol that may well itself implement some form of connection-orientated data transfers, further inspection and analysis of communications is not done by the FB2700. To do so would require support for a very wide range of protocols that are carried over UDP, and this is generally not practical.

Instead, all sessions (including TCP ones) have an associated time-out value - if no packets matching the session arrive for a period equal to the time-out value, the session is deleted automatically. This is adequate for most cases, but may require selection of a suitable time-out value based on knowledge of how frequently the higher-level protocol sends packets. An unnecessarily high time-out may cause the session-table to become populated with a significant number of sessions that correspond to flows or connections that have actually ceased.

However, the FB2700 has highly efficient handling of session tracking, both in terms of memory usage and processor load, so in practice it can easily handle very large session tables (hundreds of thousands of entries).

Note that TCP sessions also have time-outs ; this is necessary since the connection may not be cleanly closed, for example one end may crash - if there were no time-out, the session-table would hold a stale entry until the FB2700 was rebooted.

7.3. Session Rules

7.3.1. Overview

As each packet arrives, the FB2700 determines whether the packet is part of an existing active session by doing a look-up in the session table. If a matching session is found, the session-table entry details determine how the packet is handled. If no matching session is found, the list of session-rules is then analysed to determine whether a new session should be established, or whether the traffic should be dropped or rejected.

Each *session rule* contains a list of criteria that traffic must match against, and contains an *action* specification that is used in the logic to decide whether the session will be allowed or not. The session rule can also :-

- make the session subject to traffic-shaping
- specify that Network Address Translation should occur
- specify that address and/or port mapping should occur

Session-rules are grouped into *rule-sets*, and together they are involved in a well-defined processing flow sequence - described in the next section - that determines the final outcome for a candidate session.

Tip

The FB2700 provides a method to illustrate how specific traffic will be processed according to the flow described. This can be used to 'debug' your rules and rule-sets, or simply to improve / verify your understanding of the processing flow used to determine whether sessions are established. Refer to Section 15.1 for details.

7.3.2. Processing flow

The following processing flow applies to rules and rule-sets :-

- Rule-sets are processed sequentially.
- Each rule-set can optionally specify *entry-criteria* - if present, these criteria must be matched against for the rules within the rule-set to be considered.
- If the rule-set's entry-criteria are *not* met, processing immediately proceeds with the next rule-set, if any.
- If the rule-set's entry-criteria *are* met, or no entry-criteria were specified, processing of the rules within that rule-set begins :-
 - Rules are processed sequentially.
 - Each session-rule specifies criteria, and an action to be taken when traffic meets that criteria ; the action values and their meanings are shown in Table 7.1. Once a rule matches, no more rules in that rule set are considered.
 - If *all* of the rules in a rule-set have been considered, and *none* of them matched against the traffic, then the action specified by the `no-match-action` attribute (of the rule-set) is taken. The available actions are the same as for a session-rule.

Table 7.1. Action attribute values

"action" attribute	Action taken
drop	immediately cease rule processing, 'quietly' drop the packet and create a short-lived session to drop further packets matching the rule criteria
reject	immediately cease rule processing, drop the packet, send rejection notification back to the traffic source and create a short-lived session to drop further packets matching the rule criteria
accept	immediately cease rule processing, and establish a normal session
continue	'jump' out of the rule-set ; processing resumes with the next rule-set, if any
ignore	immediately cease rule processing, 'quietly' drop the packet but do <i>not</i> create a short-lived session (in contrast to the <code>drop</code> action)

The short-lived session that is created when either `drop` and `reject` are actioned will appear in the session table when it is viewed in the web user interface (or via the CLI) - see Figure 7.1 for an example of ICMP sessions resulting from some pings ; the session lifetime is around one second.

Figure 7.1. Example sessions created by drop and reject actions

Sessions

Sessions										
T	P	Bytes	Packets	Source	Port	Target	Port	Gateway		
0	1	1176	14	81.187.96.81	51999	9.8.7.5	51999		reject	Check
0	1	1932	23	81.187.96.81	47903	9.8.7.6	47903		drop	Check

Note that `drop` and `reject` both drop packets, with the difference only being whether notification of this is sent back to the traffic source.

Note

It is possible to mis-understand the function of the `no-match-action` attribute, given *where* it is specified (*i.e. an attribute of the rule-set object*). This is particularly true when using XML. If you are unfamiliar with the FB2700's session rule specifications, you may interpret the `no-match-action` as specifying what happens if the rule-set's entry-criteria are not met (*i.e. at the beginning of processing a rule-set*).

`no-match-action` specifies what happens after the entry-criteria *were* met, and all the rules were considered, but none of them matched ("no-match") *i.e. at the very end of processing a rule-set*.

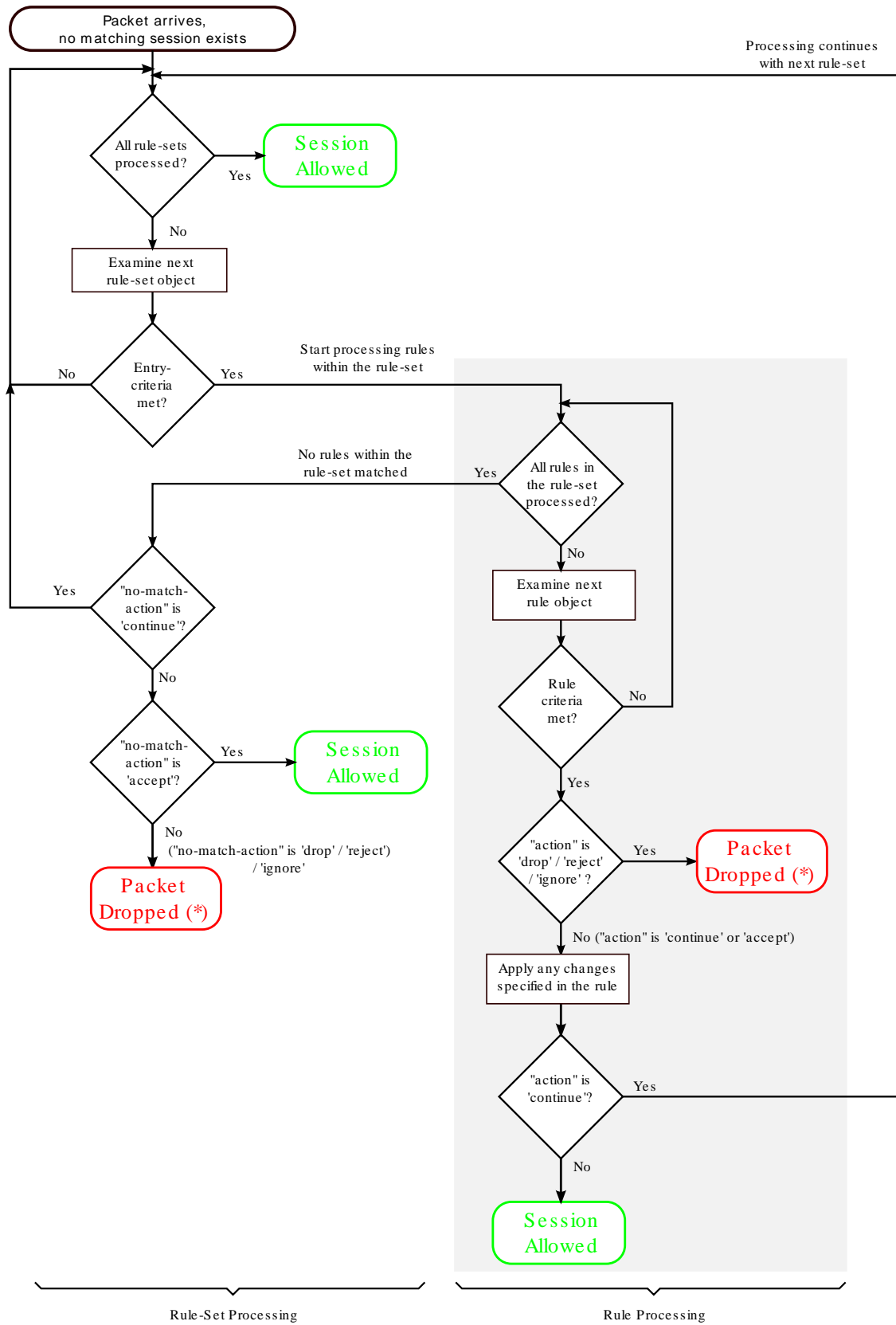
Caution

If all rule-sets have been considered, and no action has specified that the session should be dropped or rejected, *it will be ALLOWED*.

We recommend you use the firewall diagnostic tests to verify that you have constructed rule-sets and rules that provide the firewalling you intended. We also highly recommend external intrusion testing to verify behaviour. We also recommend that firewalling is done using the method described in Section 7.3.3.1.

This processing flow is illustrated as a flow-chart in Figure 7.2 :-

Figure 7.2. Processing flow chart for rule-sets and session-rules



(*) for "drop" and "reject", a short-lived 'drop' session is created

It is helpful to understand that a session rule *contributes* to the final set of information recorded in the session-table entry - a rule does not necessarily completely define what the session-table will contain, unless it is the *only* rule that matches the traffic under consideration. It is for this reason, that the rules contain attributes with names such as 'set-nat' - the 'set' refers to the action of setting a flag or a parameter in the session-table entry that is being 'constructed'.

It is possible, and quite common, for more than one rule (in different rule-sets) to match given traffic. In such cases, the rules generally serve different purposes - earlier ones might be for firewalling, whilst later ones might be used to subsequently assign some of the allowed-traffic to traffic-shaping. In such cases, an earlier rule will use the *continue* action to jump out of the earlier rule-set.

7.3.3. Defining Rule-Sets and Rules

A rule-set is defined by a `rule-set` top-level object. To create or edit rule-sets in the web user interface, select the "Firewall" category icon - here you will see the list of existing `rule-set` objects (if any), and a "Add" link next to each.

To create a new rule-set, click on an "Add" link to insert a new rule-set before the one associated with the link. This will take you to a new rule-set definition. Editing an existing rule-set works similarly - click the "Edit" link next to the rule-set you want to modify.

As described in Section 7.3.2, a rule-set can optionally specify *entry-criteria* - in the web user interface, these come under the heading "Matching criteria for whole set", when editing a rule-set definition. The entry-criteria are determined by the following attributes, all of which are optional, but if they are specified, then the criteria must be met for processing of the rules within the rule-set to occur :-

- criteria regarding where the session is originating from :-
 - source-interface : one or more interfaces
 - source-ip : source IP address, or address range(s)
 - source-port : source protocol port number, for protocols that use the port number concept e.g. TCP and UDP
- criteria regarding where the target of the session is :-
 - target-interface : one or more interfaces
 - target-ip : target IP address, or address range(s)
 - target-port : target protocol port number, for protocols that use the port number concept e.g. TCP and UDP
- general criteria :-
 - protocol : the IP protocol number

A rule-set can also be named by setting the name attribute value, and enabled/disabled under control of a profile. The `comment` attribute is a general purpose comment field that you can use to briefly describe the purpose of the rule-set.

Under the heading "Individual rules, first match applies", you will see the list of session-rules within the rule-set. A session-rule is defined by a `rule` object, which is a child object of a `rule-set` object.

Below the list of session-rules, you will see the `no-match-action` attribute, which is mandatory and has one of the values shown in Table 7.1. Recall that this attribute specifies the action to take if *all* of the rules in a rule-set have been considered, and *none* of them matched against the traffic.

7.3.3.1. Recommended method of implementing firewalling

Although there are likely numerous ways in which you can construct workable rule-sets that implement firewalling in addition to any traffic-shaping or NAT etc., we recommend that you implement firewalling as follows :-

- create one or more rule-sets that are specifically for firewalling
 - use one rule set per interface, with the interface specified as the target-interface in the entry criteria, such that the rule-set relates to sessions "to" that interface
 - implement a 'default drop' policy on each firewalling rule-set, such that you have to list exceptions to this policy to allow sessions to the specified target interface - to implement this policy, you set the `no-match-action` attribute to either `drop` or `reject`
 - ensure these firewalling rule-sets appear before any other (non-firewalling) rule-sets
- create subsequent rule-sets if necessary to perform any modifications to the session, such as NAT'ing, or to subject sessions to traffic shaping

Caution

If you have a large number of interfaces (for example, more than just WAN and LAN), you must take care that you have covered all the interfaces that need to be firewalled

Alternatively, you could have a single firewalling rule-set without any entry-criteria and with `no-match-action` attribute set to either `drop` or `reject` - that way, *all* traffic, regardless of its origin, or its characteristics, will be subject to the 'default drop' policy. A disadvantage of this approach is that you will need to specify target interfaces in every rule in order to replicate the functionality of the method described previously.

In any case, you can verify that your rule-sets function the way you intended using the diagnostic facility described in Section 15.1.

The XML fragment below shows a small firewalling rule-set for an interface, with a 'default drop' policy :-

```
<rule-set name="firewall_to_LAN"
  target-interface="LAN"
  no-match-action="drop"> ❶
  <rule name="web"
    target-port="80"
    protocol="6"
    comment="WAN access to company web server"/> ❷
  ❸
</rule-set>
```

- ❶ Rule-set is named "firewall_to_LAN". The rule-set only applies to sessions targetting the "LAN" interface, from any other interface. The action to perform when no rule within the rule-set applies, is to "drop".
- ❷ Rule is named "web", the criteria for matching the rule only specifies that the traffic must be targetting TCP (protocol 6) port 80. The `action` attribute is not present, so the action defaults to "continue" - processing continues with next rule-set. Unless any subsequent rule (in a later rule-set) drops the session, the session will therefore be allowed.
- ❸ If no rule matched the traffic, then the "no-match-action" of the rule-set is applied here - in this case the session is dropped, thus enforcing a 'default drop' policy

Note

The FB2700 itself does not generally need firewalling rules to protect against unwanted or malicious access, as the access controls on services can provide this protection directly - see Chapter 14 for discussion of access controls.

**TBC add section on 'outbound' firewalling? **

7.3.3.2. Changes to session traffic

Normally, a session table entry holds enough information to allow return traffic to reach its destination, without potentially being firewalled.

However, a session-rule can specify certain changes to be made to the outbound traffic in a session, and the session-table entry will hold additional information that allows the FB2700 to account for these changes when processing the return traffic.

For example, a session-rule can specify that the source IP address of the outbound packets be changed, such that they appear to be coming from a different address, typically one owned by the FB2700 itself. Return traffic will then be sent back to this modified address - assuming that the intention is that this traffic reach the original source IP address, the FB2700 will change the destination IP address in return traffic to be the original source IP address. It can do this because it has stored the original source IP address in the session table entry.

The `set-source-ip`, `set-source-port`, `set-target-ip` and `set-target-port` attributes request this kind of change to be made.

Note

Any rule that changes part of the "session" will affect the matching criteria in subsequent rule-sets and rules - i.e. they test the *changed* version of the session. A caveat to this is that `set-nat` just sets a flag, causing the source IP address and port number to be picked at the *end* of rule set processing, so the new source IP address or port number used for NAT cannot be tested for in later rule-sets.

Network Address Translation (NAT) works in exactly the same way, except that rather than specifying which address to map the original source IP address too, the FB2700 will use an appropriate source IP address given where the traffic needs to be routed to. Furthermore, NAT will also modify the protocol source-port number (applicable to UDP or TCP sessions) to become an unused local (to the FB2700) port number. This gives the session a completely new source identity from the far-end point of view. NAT is requested by setting the `set-nat` attribute to `true`

As mentioned in Section 6.3.1, a subnet definition has a `nat` attribute, which can be set to `true` to enable NAT for all sessions originating from that subnet - this is a shortcut that can be used instead of creating a session-rule to achieve this, and is useful for RFC1918 private IP subnets.

Finally, if NAT is not requested using either of these methods, and the session is going to PPP connection or dongle that has its `nat` attribute set to `true` then NAT is requested. This is again a shortcut for such devices that can be used if they only have one routed IP address.

7.3.3.3. Graphing and traffic shaping

The `set-graph` and `set-reverse-graph` attributes cause the session traffic to be graphed, and therefore possibly be subject to traffic shaping ; they perform the same function as the `graph` attribute that can be specified on many different objects, as described in Chapter 10.

With `set-graph`, the graph "Tx" direction will be the direction the session was established in, and the "Rx" direction is therefore the opposite direction. With `set-reverse-graph`, the "Tx"/"Rx" directions are swapped compared to using `set-graph`.

7.3.3.4. Configuring session time-outs

As discussed in Section 7.2.1, each session-table entry has a timer associated with it - this ensures that inactive sessions are removed from the session-table. Two time-out values are configurable :-

- Initial time-out : this time-out period begins when the first reply packet of the session arrives at the FB2700 ; it is specified by the `set-ongoing-timeout` attribute.
- Ongoing time-out : this time-out period begins when each subsequent packet of the session arrives at the FB2700 ; it is specified by the `set-initial-timeout` attribute.

Both of these time-outs are specified as an XML Period value - refer to Section 4.1.3 for details on this syntax.

Chapter 8. Routing

8.1. Routing logic

The routing logic in the FB2700 operates primarily using a conventional routing system of *most specific prefix*, which is commonly found in many IP stacks in general purpose computers and routers.

Conventional routing determines where to send a packet based *only* on the packet's *destination* IP address, and is applied on a 'per packet' basis - i.e. each packet that arrives is processed independently from previous packets.

Note that with this routing system, it does not matter where the packet came *from*, either in terms of source IP address or which interface/tunnel etc. the packet arrived on.

The FB2700 also implements more specialised routing logic that can route traffic based on other characteristics, such as source address, that can be used when routing based on destination IP address alone is insufficient.

A *route* consists of :-

- a 'target' specifying where to send the packet to - this may be a specialised action, such as silently dropping the packet (a 'black-hole')
- an IP address range that this routing information applies to - the *routing destination*

A *routing table* consists of one or more routes. Unlike typical IP stacks, the FB2700 supports multiple independent routing tables.

Routing destinations are expressed using CIDR notation - if you are not familiar with this notation, please refer to Appendix B for an overview. Note that ip-groups cannot be used when defining subnets or routes. IP-groups allow arbitrary ranges and not just prefixes, but routes can only use prefixes.

There are two cases that deserve special attention :-

- A routing destination may be a single IP address, in which case it is a "/32" in CIDR notation (for IPv4).
- A routing destination may encompass the entire IPv4 (or IPv6) address space, written as 0.0.0.0/0 (for IPv4) or ::/0 (for IPv6) in CIDR notation. Since the prefix is zero-length, all destination IP addresses will match this route - however, it is always the shortest-prefix route present, and so will only match if there are no more specific routes. A 0.0.0.0/0 route therefore acts as a *default* route.

The decision of where to send the packet is based on matching the packet's destination IP address to one or more routing table entries. If more than one entry matches, then the longest (most specific) prefix entry is used. The longest prefix is assumed to be associated with the optimal route to the destination IP address, since it is the 'most specific', i.e. it covers a smaller IP address range than any shorter matching prefix.

For example, if you have two routes, one for 10.0.1.32/27 , and another for 10.0.0.0/8 (which encompasses 10.0.1.32/27), then a destination IP address of 10.0.1.17 will match the longest-prefix (smallest address range) "/27" route.

The order in which routes are created does not normally matter as you do not usually have two routes that have the same prefix. However, there is an attribute of every route called the `localpref` which decides between identical routes - the *higher* `localpref` being the one which applies. If you have identical routes with the same `localpref` then one will apply (you cannot rely on which one) but it can, in some cases, mean you are bonding multiple links.

Tip

You can show the route(s) that apply for a specific destination IP address or address range using the CLI command `show route`. You can also see a list of all routes in a routing table using the CLI command `show routes`.

8.2. Routing targets

A route can specify various targets for the packet :-

Table 8.1. Route targets

Target	Notes
an Ethernet interface (locally-attached subnet)	requires ARP or ND to find the device on the LAN to which the traffic is to be sent.
a specific IP address (a "gateway")	the packet is forwarded to another router (gateway) ; routing is then determined based on the gateway's IP address instead
tunnel interface such as L2TP, PPPoE or FB105 tunnels. **TBC is PPPoE really a 'tunnel'? it's a type of interface ... **	
special targets	e.g. the FB2700 itself, or to a <i>black hole</i> (causes all traffic to be dropped)

These are covered in more detail in the following sections.

8.2.1. Subnet routes

Whenever you define a subnet or one is created dynamically (e.g. by DHCP), an associated route is automatically created for the associated prefix. Packets being routed to a subnet are sent to the Ethernet interface that the subnet is associated with. Traffic routed to the subnet will use ARP or ND to find the final MAC address to send the packet to.

In addition, a subnet definition creates a very specific single IP (a "/32" for IPv4, or a "/128" for IPv6) route for the IP address of the FB2700 itself on that subnet. This is a separate *loop-back* route which effectively internally routes traffic back into the FB2700 itself - i.e. it never appears externally.

A subnet can also have a *gateway* specified, either in the config or by DHCP or RA. This gateway is just like creating a route to 0.0.0.0/0 or ::/0 as a specific route configuration. It is mainly associated with the subnet for convenience. If defined by DHCP or RA then, like the rest of the routes created by DHCP or RA, it is removed when the DHCP or RA times out.

Example: `<subnet ip="192.168.0.1/24" />` creates a route for destination 192.168.0.0/24 to the interface associated with that subnet. A loop-back route to 192.168.0.1 (the FB2700's own IP address on that subnet) is also created.

8.2.2. Routing to an IP address (gateway route)

Routes can be defined to forward traffic to another IP address, which will typically be another router (often also called a *gateway*) For such a routing target, the gateway's IP address is then used to determine how to route the traffic, and another routing decision is made. This subsequent routing decision usually identifies an interface or other data link to send the packet via - in more unusual cases, the subsequent routing decision identifies another gateway, so it is possible for the process to be 'recursive' until a 'real' destination is found.

Example: `<route ip="0.0.0.0/0" gateway="192.168.0.100" />` creates a default IPv4 route that forwards traffic to 192.168.0.100. The routing for 192.168.0.100 then has to be looked up to find the final target, e.g. it may be to an Ethernet interface, in which case an ARP is done for 192.168.0.100 to find the MAC to send the traffic.

8.2.3. Special targets

It is possible to define two special targets :-

- 'black-hole' : packets routed to a black-hole are silently dropped. 'Silent' refers to the lack of any ICMP response back to the sender.
- 'no-where' (also called 'dead-end') : packets routed to 'no-where' are also dropped but the FB2700 generates ICMP error responses back to the sender.

The `blackhole` and `nowhere` top-level objects are used to specify prefixes which are routed to these special targets. In the User Interface, these objects can be found under the Routes category icon.

8.3. Dynamic route creation / deletion

For data links that have an Up/Down state, such as L2TP or FB105 tunnels, or PPP links, the ability to actually send traffic to the route target will depend on the state of the link. For such links, you can specify route(s) to automatically create each time the link comes up - when the link goes down these routes are removed automatically. Refer to Chapter 12 for details on how to achieve this via the `routes` attribute on the tunnel definition objects.

Note

Routes to subnets on Ethernet interfaces do not support this functionality.

This can be useful where a link such as PPPoE is defined with a given `localpref` value, and a separate route is defined with a *lower* `localpref` value (i.e. less preferred), and therefore acts as a fallback route if the PPPoE link drops.

8.4. Routing tables

The conventional routing logic described above operates using one of possibly many routing tables that the FB2700 can support simultaneously. Routing tables are numbered, with the default being routing table 0 (zero).

The various ways to add routes allow the routing table to be specified, and so allow completely independent routing for different routing tables. The default table (table zero) is used when optional routing-table specification attributes or CLI command parameters are omitted.

Each `interface` is logically in a routing table and traffic arriving on it is processed based on the routes in that routing table. Tunnels like FB105 and L2TP allow the wrapped tunnel packets to work on one routing table and the tunnel payload packets to be on another. In firewalling models, it is possible to *jump* between routing tables using a rule in a rule-set.

8.5. Route overrides

The *conventional* routing logic described so far operates very much like any conventional router, with the addition of some handling for bonding and duplicate subnets.

However the FB2700 also allows the possibility of *route overrides* which control routing in more more detail. This feature is part of session tracking functionality, and so applies on a *per-session* basis (contrasting with the per-packet basis for the conventional routing). For details on sessions, and session-tracking, refer to Chapter 7.

When establishing a session it is possible to scan an ordered list of rules which can consider not only the target IP but also source IP, protocol, ports, and interfaces being used. The result is (typically) to set a routing target IP *for the session* (and possibly a routing table to *jump* between tables).

Note

The destination IP in the packet header is not modified - rather, an 'overriding' routing target IP address is stored in the session-table entry.

This is done for each direction on the session and remembered. This new target IP is then used on a per packet basis in the same way as above instead of the destination IP address of the packet.

Tip

Because the route-override just sets a new target routing IP and does not allow you to set a specific tunnel or such, you may want to have a *dummy* single IP address routed down a tunnel, and then use route-override rules to tell specific sessions to use that IP as the gateway. Future software releases may provide a means to specify a tunnel as a routing gateway more directly.

Chapter 9. Profiles

Profiles allow you to enable/disable various aspects of the FB2700's configuration (and thus functionality) based on things such as time-of-day or presence/absence of Ping responses from a specified device.

9.1. Overview

A profile is a two-state control entity - it is either Active or Inactive. Once a profile is defined, it can be referenced in various configuration objects where the profile state will control the behaviour of that object.

A profile's state is determined by one or more defined *tests*, which are performed periodically. If multiple tests are specified, then the overall test result will be pass only if all the individual test results are pass. Assuming the profile's state is Active, then when the overall test result has been 'fail' for a specified duration, the profile transitions to Inactive. Similarly, once the overall test result has been 'pass' for a specified duration, the profile transitions to Active. These two durations are controlled by attributes and provide a means to 'filter' out short duration 'blips' that are of little interest.

An example of a test that can be performed is a Ping test - ICMP echo request packets are sent, and replies are expected. If replies are not being received, the test fails.

Profiles can be logically combined using familiar boolean terminology i.e. AND, OR and NOT, allowing for some complex profile logic to be defined that determines a final profile state from several conditions.

By combining profiles with the FB2700's event logging facilities, they can also be used for automated monitoring and reporting purposes, where profile state changes can be e-mailed direct from the FB2700. For example, a profile using a Ping test can be used to alert you via e-mail when a destination is unreachable.

The current state of all the profiles configured on your FB2700 can be seen by choosing the "Profiles" item in the "Status" menu.

Tip

You can also define dummy profiles that are permanently Active or Inactive, which can be useful if you wish to temporarily disable some functionality without deleting configuration object(s). For example, you can force an FB105 tunnel to be Down, preventing traffic from being routed through it. Refer to Section 9.2.4 for details.

9.2. Creating/editing profiles

In the web user interface, profiles are created and edited by clicking on the "Profiles" category icon. A profile is defined by a `profile` top-level object.

9.2.1. Timing control

The following timing control parameters apply :-

- `interval` : the interval between tests being performed
- `timeout` : the duration that the overall test must have been failing for before the profile state changes to Inactive
- `recover` : the duration that the overall test must have been passing for before the profile state changes to Active

The `timeout` and `recover` parameters do not apply to manually set profiles (see Section 9.2.4) and those based on time-of-day (see Section 9.2.2.2).

9.2.2. Tests

9.2.2.1. General tests

'General' tests are provided for the following :-

- FB105 tunnel state : the `fb105` attribute lists one or more FB105 tunnel names (see Section 12.1) - if *any* of the specified tunnels are in the Active state, this tunnel-state test will pass
- USB 3G dongle connection state : the `dongle` attribute lists one or more 3G dongle names (see Section 13.1.1) - if *any* of the specified dongles are in the connected state, this dongle-state test will pass
- PPPoE connection state : the `ppp` attribute lists one or more PPPoE connection names (see Chapter 11) - if *any* of the specified connections are up, this pppoe-state test will pass
- Routable addresses : the `route` attributes lists one or more IP addresses (full addresses, not CIDR prefix ranges) - only if *all* the addresses are 'routable' - i.e. there is an entry in the routing table that will match that address - will this test pass. Refer to Chapter 8 for discussion of routing tables and the routing logic used by the FB2700
- VRRP state : the `vrrp` attribute lists one or more Virtual Router group membership definitions (see Chapter 16) by name - if the FB2700 is not the master device in any of these Virtual Routers, this test will fail

If more than one of these general tests is selected (corresponding attribute specified), then they must all pass (along with all other tests defined) for the overall result to be pass.

9.2.2.2. Time/date tests

Time and/or date tests are specified by `date` and/or `time` objects, which are child objects of the `profile` object.

You can define multiple date ranges via multiple `date` objects - the date test will pass if the current date is within *any* of the defined ranges. Similarly, you can define multiple time ranges via multiple `time` objects - the time test will pass if the current time is within *any* of the defined ranges.

9.2.2.3. Ping tests

Like time/date tests, a Ping test is specified by a `ping` object, as a child of the `profile` object. At most one Ping test can be defined per profile - logical combinations of profiles can be used to combine Ping tests if necessary.

9.2.3. Inverting overall test result

The tests described in the previous section are used to form an overall test result. Normally this overall result is used to determine the profile state using the mapping Pass > Active and Fail > Inactive. By setting the `invert` attribute to `true`, the overall result is inverted (Pass changed to Fail and vice-versa) first before applying the mapping.

9.2.4. Manual override

You can manually override all tests, and force the profile state using the `set` attribute - a value of `true` forces the state to Active, and `false` forces it to Inactive.

Note that the value of the `invert` attribute is ignored when manual override is requested.

These fixed-state profiles can be used as simple on/off controls for configuration objects. The following shows an example of two such profiles, expressed in XML :-

```
<profile name="Off" set="false"/>  
<profile name="On" set="true"/>
```

Chapter 10. Traffic Shaping

The FB2700 includes traffic shaping functionality that allows you to control the speed of specific traffic flows through the FB2700. The FB2700 also provides *graphing* functionality, allowing specific traffic flows to be plotted on a graph image (PNG format) that the FB2700 generates. Within the FB2700, traffic shaping and graphing are closely associated, and this is reflected in how you configure traffic shaping - in order to be able to perform traffic shaping, you must first graph the traffic flow.

10.1. Graphs and Shapers

10.1.1. Graphs

Several objects in the FB2700's configuration allow you to specify the name of a *graph*, by setting the value of the `graph` attribute. This causes the traffic flow that is associated with that object (a firewall rule, an interface, or whatever the attribute is attached to) to be recorded on a graph with the specified name. For connections that have a defined state, such as a PPP link, the graph will also show the link state history. Other information, such as packet loss and latency may also be displayed, depending on whether it can be provided by the type of object you are graphing.

For example, the XML snippet below shows the `graph` attribute being set on an `interface`. As soon as you have set a `graph` attribute (and saved the configuration), a new graph with the specified name will be created.

```
<interface name="LAN"
  port="LAN"
  graph="LAN">
```

The graph is viewable directly (as a PNG image) from the FB2700 via the web User Interface - to view a graph, click the "PNG" item in the "Graphs" menu. This will display all the graphs that are currently configured - it is not currently possible to show a single graph within the web User Interface environment.

Note

You may find images shown for graph names that are no longer specified anywhere in the configuration. Over time, these graphs will disappear automatically.

Alternatively, the underlying graph data is available in XML format, again via the FB2700's built-in HTTP server. The XML version of the data can be viewed in the web User Interface by clicking the "XML" item in the "Graphs" menu, and then clicking on the name of the graph you're interested in.

Both directions of traffic flow are recorded, and are colour-coded on the PNG image generated by the FB2700. The directions are labelled "tx" and "rx", but the exact meaning of these will depend on what type of object the graph was referenced from - for example, on a graph for an `interface`, "tx" will be traffic leaving the FB2700, and "rx" will be traffic arriving at the FB2700.

Each data point on a graph corresponds to a 100 second interval ; where a data point is showing a traffic rate, the rate is an average over that interval. For each named graph, the FB2700 stores data for the last 24 hours.

Note

Specifying a graph does not itself cause any traffic shaping to occur, but is a pre-requisite to specifying how the associated traffic flow should be shaped.

10.1.2. Shapers

Once you have graphed a (possibly bi-directional) traffic flow, you can then also define speed restrictions on those flows. These can be simple "Tx" and "Rx" speed limits or more complex settings allowing maximum average speeds over time.

You define the speed controls associated with the graphed traffic flow(s) by creating a `shaper` top-level object. To create or edit a `shaper` object in the web User Interface, first click on the "Shape" category icon. To create a new object, click the "Add" link. To edit an existing object, click the appropriate "Edit" link instead.

The `shaper` object specifies the parameters (primarily traffic rates) to use in the traffic shaping process, and the `shaper` is *associated* with the appropriate existing graph by specifying the `name` attribute of the `shaper` object to be the *same* as the name of the graph.

Chapter 11. PPPoE

The FB2700 can operate as a PPPoE client. This is typically used to connect to an Internet service provider, either via a suitable PPPoE modem, bridging router, or direct connection.

The typical usage is to use one or more ports on the FB2700 each connected directly to a suitable PPPoE device such as a bridging router.

The PPPoE device is usually very dumb and may not need any configuration at all. The FireBrick is responsible for the login to the ISP using the PPPoE link, and the configuration for this is part of the FB2700's configuration and not the router. This makes it very easy to make use of spare routers, etc, without the complication of configuring additional devices.

It is possible to connect more than one PPP device to a single FB2700 port using an Ethernet switch. If you do this then you ideally need a switch that handles VLANs (see Appendix D if you are not familiar with VLANs) so that each router can be logically connected to a different interface on the FireBrick. It is also a good idea to have a switch that supports *jumbo frames* if using FTTC or FTTP services in this way.

Note

This section contains information relating to access network services (such as DSL and Fibre-To-The-Cabinet) available in the United Kingdom. Although this information will not be directly applicable to services available in other countries, the concepts are the same - with appropriate knowledge of your ISP service, and suitable equipment, the FB2700 should work equally well with services that are available in other countries.

11.1. Types of DSL line and router in the United Kingdom

In the UK there are various types of DSL line and router than can be used. Any device that supports PPPoE can work with the FireBrick, but some options are only available with some devices, as listed below :-

- BT 20CN or 21CN lines can support PPPoE and PPPoA *on the wire*. This means you can use them with a PPPoE/A modem (such as a *Vigor V-120 out of the box*, or with a bridging router such as the *Zyxel P660* configured in bridge mode.
- Be PPPoE lines only support PPPoE. This means you have to use a bridging router or other device that handles PPPoE *on the wire* and not a PPPoE/A modem.
- Be PPPoA lines only support PPPoA. This means you have to use a PPPoE/A modem, and not a bridging router.
- BT FTTC lines come with a VDSL modem which supports PPPoE directly so no extra equipment is needed to connect to the FireBrick.
- BT FTTP lines terminate on an active NTE which supports PPPoE directly so no extra equipment is needed to connect to the FireBrick.

For other types of lines in the UK, or those in other countries, you need to know what they can do *on the wire* (PPPoA or PPPoE) and have a suitable modem/router to talk that protocol and convert to PPPoE on the LAN link to the FB2700. It seems most DSL routers will bridge PPPoE on the wire to PPPoE on the LAN, but few will act as a PPPoE access concentrator. The *Vigor V-120* is one of the few that handle PPPoA on the wire and PPPoE link to the FB2700.

A significant benefit of the *Vigor V-120* is that it works with *no configuration* on BT 20CN and 21CN lines as well as Be PPPoA lines - you just plug it in to the line and the FB2700 and it just works.

For fibre to the cabinet (FTTC) and fibre to the premises (FTTP) service you connect the FB2700 directly to the service with no extra equipment.

11.2. Defining PPPoE links

A PPPoE link is defined by a `ppp` top-level object. To create or edit PPPoE links in the web user interface, select the "Interface" category icon - under the section headed "PPPoE settings" you will see the list of existing `ppp` objects (if any), and an "Add" link.

For most situations, configuring a PPPoE link only requires that you specify the physical port number, or alternatively, a port group name (see Section 6.2), that the router/modem is connected to and the login credentials i.e. username and password. The port number or port group name is specified via the `port` attribute on the `ppp` object, and credentials are specified via the `username` and `password` attributes.

If you are connecting multiple routers/modems via a VLAN capable switch to a single FB2700 port, you will also need to specify the VLAN used for the FB2700 to router/modem layer 2 connection - this is done by setting the value of the `vlan` attribute too.

As an example, if you were to connect a single modem/router directly to port 4 on your FB2700 (i.e. not using VLANs), then the configuration needed, shown as an XML fragment, would be :-

```
<ppp port="4" username="..." password="..." />
```

You may also want to give the PPPoE link a name, by setting the `name` attribute - you can then reference the link in, for example, a profile (see Section 9.2.2.1).

There are a number of additional options (see below), but for most configurations this is all you need. It causes the FB2700 to connect and set a default route for internet access via the PPP link.

11.2.1. IPv6

If your ISP negotiates IPv6 on the link, then a default route is set for IPv6 traffic down the line. You just need to configure your LAN subnet to have the IPv6 block your ISP has assigned to you.

11.2.2. Additional options

11.2.2.1. MTU and TCP fix

Normally PPPoE operates with a maximum packet size of 1492 bytes - this is due to the 8 byte PPPoE header that is used, and the normal 1500 byte payload limit of an Ethernet packet. The FB2700 includes an option to set the PPPoE MTU, so that when used with equipment capable of jumbo frames (such as BT FTTC and FTTP services) this allows use of slightly larger frames to provide a 1500 byte MTU. To achieve this, simply set the `mtu` attribute to a value of 1500. By default the `tcp-mss-fix` attribute is also set, which means when working with a smaller MTU such as 1492, any connections that try and establish 1500 byte links are adjusted on the fly to be the lower MTU. This avoids problems with a lot of corporate and bank web sites that do not handle MTU and ICMP correctly. Typically your ISP will be doing this TCP fix for you as well.

Testing has been done which confirms setting `mtu="1500"` works correctly on BT FTTC lines.

Note

Testing using a Zyxel P660R in bridge mode confirms that BT 21CN ADSL lines will negotiate 1500 byte MTU, but it seems the Zyxel will not bridge more than 1496 bytes of PPP payload. If you select more than 1492 MTU and have problems it could be that some device connecting you to the access

concentrator cannot handle the larger packets (such as a bridge or a switch). For this reason the default MTU is 1492.

11.2.2.2. Service and ac-name

The PPPoE protocol allows multiple services to be offered, and the service setting can be used to select which is available. This is rarely needed and should be ignored unless you know what you are doing. If specified, even as an empty string, then only matching services will be selected.

The name specified via the `ac-name` attribute is the name of the PPPoE endpoint (access controller). In some cases there may be a choice of endpoints and setting this causes one to be selected by name. Again, this is rarely needed, and if specified will only match the name you specify. On Be PPPoE lines, for example, you could select a specific LAC by name if you wanted to.

11.2.2.3. Logging

The PPP connection status, and PPP negotiation can be logged by setting the `log` attribute to a valid log target. This can be useful for debugging.

11.2.2.4. Speed and graphs

As discussed in Chapter 10, graphs allow you to visual connections, in terms of their state, traffic rates and patterns etc. By setting the `graph` attribute, you can cause the state of the line, data transferred each way, and current packet loss and latency to be recorded on a graph. This normally operates in slow mode (an LCP every 16 seconds) but by setting the `slow` attribute to `false` you can monitor a line every second. ****TBC is this correct ; do we not use lcp-rate now?*****

Once you are graphing the PPPoE connection, you can set traffic shaping to control speed (see Section 10.1.2). Alternatively, a PPPoE connection is something you can set a speed limit on directly - setting the `speed` attribute will control the speed of traffic *sent to* the Internet - this is mainly used when bonding PPP links.

Chapter 12. Tunnels

The FB2700 supports the following tunnelling protocols :-

- FB105 lightweight tunnelling protocol
- L2TP

Support for FB105 tunnels means the FB2700 can inter-work with existing FB105 hardware, and with FB6000 devices.

12.1. FB105 tunnels

The FB105 tunnelling protocol is a FireBrick proprietary protocol that was first implemented in the FireBrick FB105 device, and is popular with FB105 users for setting up VPNs etc. It is 'lightweight' in as much as it is relatively simple, with low overhead and easy setup, but it does not currently offer encryption. Although encryption is not available, the protocol does digitally sign packets, so that tunnel end-points can be confident that the traffic originated from another 'trusted' end-point. Where it matters, encryption can be utilised via secure protocols such as HTTPS or SSH over the tunnel.

The protocol supports multiple simultaneous tunnels to/from an end-point device, and Local Tunnel ID values are used on an end-point device to identify each tunnel. The 'scope' of the Local ID is restricted to a single end-point device - as such, the tunnel *itself* does not possess a (single) ID value, and is instead identified by the Local IDs in use at both ends, *which may well differ*.

12.1.1. Tunnel wrapper packets

The protocol works by wrapping a complete IP packet in a UDP packet, with the destination port number of the UDP packet defaulting to 1, but which can be set to any other port number if required. These UDP packets are referred to as the 'tunnel wrappers', and include the digital signature. As with any other UDP traffic *originating* at the FB2700, the tunnel wrappers are then encapsulated in an IP packet and sent to the IP address of the *far-end* tunnel end-point. The IP packet that is contained in a tunnel wrapper packet is referred to as the 'tunnel payload', and IP addresses in the payload packet are not involved in any routing decisions until the payload is 'unwrapped' at the far-end.

Payload packet traffic is sent down a tunnel if the FB2700's routing logic determines that tunnel is the *routing target* for the traffic. Refer to Chapter 8 for discussion of the routing processes used in the FB2700. Often, a dynamic route is specified in the tunnel definition, such that traffic to a certain range of IP addresses (or possibly all IP addresses, for a default route) is routed down the tunnel when it is in the Up state - see Section 12.1.4 for details.

Tip

Payload IP addressing is not restricted to RFC1918 private IP address space, and so FB105 tunnels can be used to transport public IP address traffic too. This is ideal where you want to provide public IP addresses to a network, but it is either impossible to route the addresses directly to the network - e.g. it is behind a NAT'ing router, or is connected via networks (e.g. a 3rd party ISP) that you have no control over - or you wish to benefit from having 'portable' public IP addresses e.g. you can physically relocate a tunnel end-point FB2700 such that it is using different WAN connectivity, yet still have the same public IP address block routed to an attached network.

12.1.2. Setting up a tunnel

You define a tunnel by creating an `fb105` top-level object. In the web User Interface, these objects are created and managed under the "Tunnels" category, in the section headed "FB105 tunnel settings".

The basic parameters for a tunnel are :-

- `name` : name of the tunnel (OPTIONAL)
- `local-id` : the Local ID to use for the tunnel (REQUIRED)
- `remote-id` : the ID used at the far-end for this tunnel (this will be the Local ID used on the far-end for this tunnel) (REQUIRED)
- `secret` : this is a pre-shared secret string that must be set to the same value in the tunnel definitions on both end-point devices
- `ip` : the IP address of the far-end end-point device (OPTIONAL)

The far-end IP address is optional, and if omitted, tunnel wrapper packets will be sent to the IP address from which wrapper packets are being received (if any). As such, at least one of the two end-points involved must have a far-end IP address specified, but it is not necessary for *both* ends to specify the other. This allows you to setup a tunnel on an end-point without knowing (or caring) what the far-end IP address is ; this means you can handle cases such as *one* of end-points being behind a NAT router that has a dynamic WAN IP address, or can be used to simplify administration of end-points that are used to terminate a large number of tunnels, by omitting the far-end IP address in tunnel definitions on such 'shared' end-points. The latter case is typical where an ISP deploys a FireBrick device to provide a 'head-end' device for tunnel bonding.

If you wish to use a different UDP port number than the default of 1, specify the port number using the `port` attribute.

12.1.3. Viewing tunnel status

The status of all configured FB105 tunnels can be seen in the web User Interface by selecting "FB105" from the "Status" menu. The tunnels are listed in ascending Local ID order, showing the far-end IP in use, the tunnel name, and the state. The table row background colour is also used to indicate tunnel state, with green for Up and red for Down.

Note that there is a third state that a tunnel can be in, that is "Up/Down" ****TBC confirm**** - this indicates that tunnel wrapper packets are being received, but that they are informing this end-point that the far-end is *not* receiving tunnel wrapper packets. This means the tunnel is essentially only established unidirectionally, typically because of a firewalling, routing, NAT or similar issue that is prevent the correct bidirectional flow of tunnels wrapper packets between the tunnel end-points.

Tunnel status can also be seen using the `show fb105` CLI command - see Appendix H.

12.1.4. Dynamic routes

Since a tunnel can only carry traffic properly when in the Up state, any traffic routed down a tunnel that is not Up will be discarded. The ability to *dynamically create* a route when the tunnel enters the Up state (and automatically delete the route when the tunnel leaves the Up state) allows the route to be present only when traffic can actually be routed down the tunnel. In combination with the use of route preference values, you can use this to implement fall-back to a less-preferred route if the tunnel goes down. Alternatively, you may want to intentionally use a different tunnel to carry traffic, and use profiles to enable/disable tunnel(s) - the dynamic route creation means that you do not need to manually change routing information to suit.

A dynamic route is defined by setting the `routes` attribute on the tunnel definition, specifying one or more routing destinations in CIDR format, as discussed in Section 8.1.

12.1.5. Tunnel bonding

Multiple FB105 tunnels can be *bonded* together to form a *set*, such that traffic routed down the bonded tunnel set is distributed across all the tunnels in the set. This distribution is done on a *round-robin per-packet* basis

i.e. the first packet to be sent is routed down the first tunnel in the set, each subsequent packet is routed down the subsequent tunnel in the set, and the (N+1)'th packet (where N is the number of tunnels in the set) is again routed down the first tunnel. This provides the ability to obtain aggregated bandwidths when each tunnel is carried over a different physical link, for example, such as using multiple ADSL or VDSL (FTTC) connections.

Note

Using tunnel bonding to aggregate access-network connections such as ADSL or VDSL to provide a single 'fat pipe' to the Internet requires there to be another FB105 tunnel end-point device to terminate the tunnels. Ideally this 'head-end' device is owned and operated by your ISP, but it is also possible to use a head-end device hosted by a third party, or in a datacentre in which you already have equipment. ISPs that can offer tunnel-bonding for Internet access include Andrews & Arnold [<http://aa.net.uk>] and Watchfront [<http://www.watchfront.co.uk>].

To form a bonded tunnel set, simply specify the `set` attribute of each tunnel in the set to be a value unique to that set. Although not required, you would typically use a `set` value of 1 for the first set you have defined. You can define multiple bonded sets by using different values of the `set` attribute in each set.

12.1.6. Tunnels and NAT

If you are using NAT in your network, it may have implications for how to successfully use FB105 tunnelling. The issues depend on where (on what device) in your network NAT is being performed.

12.1.6.1. FB2700 doing NAT

If you have a bonded tunnel set implementing a single logical WAN connection, then the FB2700 will typically have multiple WAN-side IP addresses, one per physical WAN connection. If you are using the FB2700 to NAT traffic to the WAN, the real source IP address of the traffic will be translated by the NAT process to one of the IP addresses used by the FB2700.

When this NAT'd traffic is carried via a tunnel, it will be the source address of the tunnel *payload* packet that is modified.

Whatever address is used, reply traffic will come back to that address. In order to ensure this reply traffic is distributed across the tunnel set by the far-end tunnelling device, the address used needs to be an address that is routed down the tunnel set, rather than one associated with any particular WAN connection.

In order to handle this scenario, the `internal-ip` attribute can be used to define which IP address is used as the source IP address of the tunnel payload packets.

TBC do you therefore need at least a /32 public IP that is used by the brick, and is not associated with any specific WAN connection? So far I have seen NAT used only where there is also a block of public IPs routed down the tunnel set.

12.1.6.2. Another device doing NAT

If you are using another device that is performing NAT (for example, a NAT'ing ADSL router) and that device is on the route that tunnel wrapper packets will take, you may have to set up what is generally called *port forwarding* on your NAT'ing router.

If the FB2700 is behind a NAT router, it will not have a public IP address of its own which you can reference as the far-end IP address on the *other* end-point device. Instead, you will need to specify the WAN address of the NAT router for this far-end address. Whether you need to setup a port forwarding rule on your NAT router depends on whether the FB2700 behind the router has a far-end IP address specified in tunnel definition(s), as follows :-

- If it does, then it will be sending tunnel wrapper packets via the NAT router such that a session will have been created in the NAT router by the session tracking functionality that is used to implement NAT (this

assumes there is no *outgoing* 'firewall' rule on the NAT router that would prevent the wrapper packets from being forwarded). The established session will mean that UDP packets that arrive from the WAN side will be passed to the UDP port number that was the source port used in the outgoing wrapper packets.

- If it does not, then you will have to manually setup a port-forwarding rule, since there will have been no outbound packets to initiate a session. The forwarding rule should specify the UDP port number that is being used by the tunnel wrapper packets (the `port` attribute value in the tunnel definition, or the default of 1 if the port is not specified)

Chapter 13. USB Port

The FB2700 features a USB port that supports a wide variety of dongles providing backup data connection via a 3G mobile network.

USB hubs are supported, so that you can connect multiple USB devices to the FB2700. In the web user interface and CLI, specific USB devices are identified by a "Socket" value, which shows the hierarchy of USB hubs and physical socket used on each until you get to the device itself.

The Socket value is a sequence of one or more numbers separated by full stops. The numbers indicate the number of each port along the chain from FB through any hubs to the final device. The USB port on the FB2700 itself is always shown as port 1, so if the dongle is attached directly to the FB2700 the Socket value will just be 1. Otherwise, if, for example, there was a hub connected to the FB2700, and the dongle was connected to USB port 3 on that hub, then it would be 1 . 3.

Note

A USB hub's ports are not necessarily numbered from left to right, and indeed, may not even be numbered in any sensible order. This is entirely down to the hardware design of the hub, and is nothing to do with the FB2700.

13.1. USB configuration

The USB subsystem of the FB2700 does not require any configuration itself as such, however you can enable logging which may be useful for diagnostic purposes. The top-level `usb` object provides this 'configuration', but is also a container for child objects that configure specific USB devices, such as a 3G dongle.

In the web user interface, the `usb` object is found in the "Interface" category, under the heading "USB and 3G/dongle settings".

13.1.1. 3G dongle configuration

You configure a 3G dongle by creating a `dongle` child object of the `usb` object. In most cases, the configuration needed to get the dongle working is trivial, and doesn't actually need to specify any 'technical' parameters, and possibly no parameters at all.

Assuming you have only one dongle connected, simply creating a `dongle` object will allow the dongle to start working automatically. It will then 'dial' a connection (since the dongle emulates a modem), and once successful, the FB2700 will try to setup a PPP connection via the dongle. When the PPP connection comes up, a new default route will be dynamically created.

If you have more than one dongle, then you will need to create a separate `dongle` object for each dongle, identifying the specific dongle via the `socket` attribute, using the "socket" value syntax described above.

Chapter 14. System Services

A *system service* provides general functionality, and runs as a separate concurrent process alongside normal traffic handling.

Table 14.1 lists the services that the FB2700 can provide :-

Table 14.1. List of system services

Service	Function
SNMP server	provides clients with access to management information using the Simple Network Management Protocol
NTP client	automatically synchronises the FB2700's clock with an NTP time server (usually using an Internet public NTP server)
Telnet server	provides an administration command-line interface accessed over a network connection
HTTP server	serves the web user-interface files to a user's browser on a client machine
DNS	relays DNS requests from either the FB2700 itself, or client machines to one or more DNS <i>resolvers</i>
RADIUS	Configuration of RADIUS service for <i>platform RADIUS</i> for L2TP. Configuration of RADIUS client accessing external RADIUS servers.

Services are configured under the "Setup" category, under the heading "General system services", where there is a single services object (XML element : `<services>`). The services object doesn't have any attributes itself, all configuration is done via child objects, one per service. If a service object is not present, the service is disabled. Clicking on the Edit link next to the services object will take you to the lists of child objects. Where a service object is not present, the table in that section will contain an "Add" link. A maximum of one instance of each service object type can be present.

14.1. Common settings

Most system service have common access control attributes as follows.

Tip

You can verify whether the access control performs as intended using the diagnostic facility described in Section 15.2

Table 14.2. List of system services

Attribute	Function
table	If specified, then the service only accepts requests/connections on the specified routing table. If not specified then the service works on any routing table. Where the service is also a client then this specifies the routing table to use (default 0).
allow	If specified then this is a list of ranges of IP addresses and ip group names from which connections are allowed. If specified as an empty list then no access is allowed. If omitted then access is allowed from everywhere. Note that if <code>local-only</code> is specified, the allow list allows access from addresses that are not local, if they are in the allow list.
local-only	This normally defaults to <code>true</code> , but not in all cases. If <code>true</code> then access is only allowed from machines on IPs on the local subnet ^a (and any addresses in the allow list, if specified).

`log`

The standard `log`, `log-error`, and `log-debug` settings can be used to specified levels of logging for the service.

^aA *locally-attached* subnet is one which can be directly reached via one of the defined interfaces, i.e. is not accessed via a gateway.

Tip

Address ranges in `allow` can be entered using either `<first address>-<last address>` syntax, or using CIDR notation : `<start address>/<prefix length>`. If a range entered using the first syntax can be expressed using CIDR notation, it will be automatically converted to that format when the configuration is saved. You can also use name(s) of defined IP address group(s) - see Section 3.1 for discussion of address groups.

14.2. HTTP Server configuration

The HTTP server's purpose is to serve the HTML and supporting files that implement the web-based user-interface for the FB2700. It is not a general-purpose web server that can be used to serve user documents, and so there is little to configure.

14.2.1. Access control

By default, the FB2700 will allow access to the user interface from any machine, although obviously access to the user interface normally requires the correct login credentials to be provided. However, if you have no need for your FB2700 to be accessed from arbitrary machines, then you may wish to 'lock-down' access to the user interface to one or more client machines, thus removing an 'attack vector'.

Access can be restricted using `allow` and `local-only` controls as with any service. If this allows access, then a user can try and login. However, access can also be restricted on a per user basis to IP addresses and using profiles, which block the login even if the password is correct.

Additionally, access to the HTTP server can be completely restricted (to all clients) under the control of a *profile*. This can be used, for example, to allow access only during certain time periods.

14.2.1.1. Trusted addresses

Trusted addresses are those from which additional access to certain functions is available. They are specified by setting the `trusted` attribute using address ranges or IP address group names. This *trusted* access allows visibility of graphs without the need for a password, and is mandatory for packet dump access.

14.3. Telnet Server configuration

The Telnet server allows standard telnet-protocol clients (available for most client platforms) to connect to the FB2700 and access a command-line interface (CLI). The CLI is documented in Chapter 21 and in the Appendix H.

14.3.1. Access control

Access control can be restricted in the same way as the HTTP (web) service, including per user access restrictions.

Note

By default, the FB2700 will only allow telnet access from machines that are on one of the locally-attached Ethernet subnets^a. This default is used since the CLI offers a degree of system control that is not available via the web interface - for example, software images stored in the on-board Flash memory can be deleted via the CLI.

The example XML below shows the telnet service configured this way :-

```
<telnet allow="10.0.0.0/24 10.1.0.3-98 10.100.100.88 10.99.99.0/24"
        comment="telnet service access restricted by IP address"
        local-only="false"/>
```

14.4. DNS configuration

The DNS service provides name resolution service to other tasks within the app software, and can act as a relay for requests received from client machines. DNS typically means converting a name, like `www.firebrick.co.uk` to one or more IP addresses, but it can also be used for *reverse DNS* finding the name of an IP address. DNS service is normally provided by your ISP.

The DNS service on the FB2700 simply relays requests to external DNS servers and caches replies. You can configure a list of external DNS servers using the `resolvers` attribute. However, DNS resolvers are also learned automatically via various systems such as DHCP and PPPoE. In most cases you do not need to set the resolvers.

14.4.1. Blocking DNS names

You can configure names such that the FB2700 issues an *NXDOMAIN* response making it appear that the domain does not exist. This can be done using a *wildcard*, e.g. you could block `*.xxx`.

Tip

You can also restrict responses to certain IP addresses on your LAN, making it that some devices get different responses. You can also control when responses are given using a *profile*, e.g. time of day.

14.4.2. Local DNS responses

Instead of blocking names, you can also make some names return pre-defined responses. This is usually only used for special cases, and there is a default for `my.firebrick.co.uk` which returns *the FireBrick's own IP*. Faking DNS responses will not always work, and new security measures such as DNSSEC will mean these faked responses will not be accepted.

14.4.3. Auto DHCP DNS

The FB2700 can also look for specific matching names and IP addresses for forward and reverse DNS that match machines on your LAN. This is done by telling the FireBrick the `domain` for your local network. Any name that is within that *domain* which matches a *client name* of a DHCP allocation that the FireBrick has made will return the IP address assigned by DHCP. This is applied in reverse for *reverse DNS* mapping an IP address back to a name. You can enable this using the `auto-dhcp` attribute.

14.5. NTP configuration

The NTP service automatically sets the FB2700's real-time-clock using time information provided by a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. There are public NTP servers available for use on the Internet, and a factory reset configuration uses `pool.ntp.org` (see <http://support.ntp.org/bin/view/Servers/NTPPoolServers> for details on `pool.ntp.org`).

The NTP service is currently only an NTP client. A future software version is likely to add NTP server functionality, allowing other NTP clients (typically those in your network) to use the FB2700 as an NTP server.

Configuration of the NTP (client) service typically only requires setting the `timeserver` attribute to specify one or more NTP servers, using either DNS name or IP address.

14.6. SNMP configuration

The SNMP service allows other devices to query the FB2700 for management related information, using the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).

As with the HTTP server, access can be restricted to :-

- specific client IP addresses, and/or
- clients connecting from locally-attached Ethernet subnets only.

See Section 14.2.1 for details. The SNMP service defaults to allowing access from anywhere.

The remaining SNMP service configuration attributes are :-

- `community` : specifies the SNMP *community* name, with a default of `public`
- `port` : specifies the port number that the SNMP service listens on - this typically does not need setting, as the default is the standard SNMP port (161).

14.7. RADIUS configuration

14.7.1. RADIUS server (platform RADIUS)

Chapter 19 provides details of how the platform RADIUS service can be used to steer incoming sessions from a carrier for L2TP.

14.7.2. RADIUS client

RADIUS is used for authentication and accounting for incoming L2TP connections. Chapter 19 provides details of how RADIUS is used for L2TP. Appendix F provides details of the specific AVPs used with RADIUS for L2TP.

RADIUS is used for authentication, call routing and accounting for VoIP services. Chapter 17 provides details of how RADIUS is used for VoIP. Appendix G provides details of the specific AVPs used with RADIUS for VoIP.

Chapter 15. Network Diagnostic Tools

Various network diagnostic tools are provided by the FB2700, accessible through either the web user interface or the CLI :-

- Packet dump : low level diagnostics to for detailed examination of network traffic passing through the FB2700
- Ping : standard ICMP echo request/reply ping mechanism
- Traceroute : classical traceroute procedure - ICMP echo request packets with increasing TTL values, soliciting "TTL expired" responses from routers along the path
- Access check : check whether a specific IP address is allowed to access the various network services described in Chapter 14
- Firewall check : check how the FB2700 would treat specific traffic when deciding whether to establish a new session (as per the processing flow described in Section 7.3.2)

Each tool produces a textual result, and can be accessed via the CLI, where the *same* result text will be shown.

Caution

The diagnostic tools provided are *not* a substitute for external penetration testing - they are intended to aid understanding of FB2700 configuration, assist in development of your configuration, and for diagnosing problems with the behaviour of the FB2700 itself.

15.1. Firewalling check

The FB2700 follows a defined processing flow when it comes to deciding whether to establish a new session - see Section 7.2 for an overview of session tracking, and its role in implementing firewalling. The processing flow used to decide whether to allow a session i.e. to implement firewalling requirements, is covered in Section 7.3.2.

The firewalling check diagnostic facility allows you to submit the following traffic parameters, and the FB2700 will show how the processing flow proceeds given those parameters - at the end of this is a statement of whether the session will be allowed or not :-

- Source IP address
- Target IP address
- Protocol number (1=ICMP, 6=TCP, 17=UDP, 58=ICMPv6)
- Target port number (only for protocols using port numbers, e.g. TCP/UDP)
- Source port number - OPTIONAL

In the web user interface, this facility is accessed by clicking on "Firewall check" in the "Diagnostics" menu. Once you have filled in the required parameters, and clicked the "Check" button, the FB2700 will produce a textual report of how the processing flow proceeded (it may be helpful to also refer to the flow chart shown in Figure 7.2).

For example, if we submit parameters that describe inbound (i.e. from a WAN connection) traffic that would result from trying to access a service on a host behind the FB2700, we have implemented a 'default drop' policy firewalling method, and we have not explicitly allowed such sessions, we would see :-

```
Checking rule-set 1 [filters] - No matched rules in rule-set,
```

```
no-match-action is DROP, no further rule-sets considered  
Final action is to DROP the session.
```

15.2. Access check

For each network service implemented by the FB2700 (see Chapter 14), this command shows whether a specific IP address will be able to access or utilise the service, based on any access restrictions configured on the service.

For example, the following shows some service configurations (expressed in XML), and the access check result when checking access for an external address, 1.2.3.4 :-

```
<http local-only="false"/>
```

```
Web control page access via http:-  
This address is allowed access to web control pages subject to  
username/password being allowed.
```

```
<telnet allow="admin-ips"  
      local-only="false"/>
```

```
Telnet access:-  
This address is not allowed access due to the allow list on telnet  
service.
```

(in this example, admin-ips is the name of an IP address group that does not include 1.2.3.4)

```
<dns local-only="true"/>
```

```
DNS resolver access:-  
This address is not on a local Ethernet subnet and so not allowed access.
```

15.3. Packet Dumping

The FireBrick includes the ability to capture packet dumps for diagnostic purposes. This might typically be used where the behaviour of the FB2700 is not as expected, and can help identify whether other devices are correctly implementing network protocols - if they are, then you should be able to determine whether the FB2700 is responding appropriately. The packet dumping facility may also be of use to you to debug traffic (and thus specific network protocols) between two hosts that the brick is routing traffic between.

This feature is provided via the FB2700's HTTP server and provides a download of a *pcap* format file (old format) suitable for use with *tcpdump* or *Wireshark*.

A packet dump can be performed by either of these methods :-

- via the user interface, using a web-page form to setup the dump - once the capture data has been downloaded it can be analysed using *tcpdump* or *Wireshark*
- using an HTTP client on another machine (typically a command-line client utility such as *curl*)

The output is streamed so that, when used with `curl` and `tcpdump`, you can monitor traffic in real time.

Limited filtering is provided by the FB2700, so you will normally apply any additional filtering you need via `tcpdump`.

15.3.1. Dump parameters

Table 15.1 lists the parameters you can specify to control what gets dumped. The "Parameter name" column shows the exact parameter name to specify when constructing a URL to use with an HTTP client. The "Web-form field" column shows the label of the equivalent field on the user interface form.

Table 15.1. Packet dump parameters

Parameter name	Web-form field	Function
interface	Interface	One or more interfaces, as the name of the interface. e.g. <code>interface=WAN</code> , also applies for name of PPPoE on an interface
l2tp	L2TP session	Where L2TP is available, one or more sessions, using the full hex accounting ID, can be specified, e.g. <code>l2tp=002132D94AE297DFF51E01</code> or you can use <code>l2tp=*</code> followed by a calling line ID - this sets up logging for a session based on calling line id when it next connects.
dongle	Dongle	Where USB Dongles are available, this is the name of the dongle from the config or the socket (e.g. "direct") of the dongle
snaplen	Snaplen	The maximum capture length for a packet can be specified, in bytes. Default 0 (auto). See notes below.
timeout	Timeout	The maximum capture time can be specified in seconds. Default 10.
ip	IP address (2-off)	Up to two IPs can be specified to filter packets
self	Include my IP	By default any traffic to or from the IP which is connecting to the web interface to access pcap is excluded. This option allows such traffic. Use with care else you dump your own dump traffic.

15.3.2. Security settings required

The following criteria must be met in order to use the packet dump facility :-

- You must be accessing from an IP listed as *trusted* in the HTTP service configuration (see Section 14.2).
- You must use a user and password for a "DEBUG level" user - the user level is set with the `level1` attribute on the `user` object.

Note

These security requirements are the most likely thing to cause your attempts to packet dump to fail. If you are getting a simple "404" error response, and think you have specified the correct URL (if using an HTTP client), please check security settings are as described here.

15.3.3. IP address matching

You may optionally specify up to two IP address to be checked for a match in packets on the interface(s) and/or L2TP session(s) specified. If you do not specify any IP addresses, then all packets are returned. If you specify one IP address then all packets containing that IP address (as source or destination) are returned. If you specify two IP addresses then only those packets containing both addresses (each address being either as source or destination) are returned.

IP matching is only performed against ARP, IPv4 or IPv6 headers and not in encapsulated packets or ICMP payloads.

If capturing too much, some packets may be lost.

15.3.4. Packet types

The capture can collect different types of packets depending on where the capture is performed. All of these are presented as Ethernet frames, with faked Ethernet headers where the packet type is not Ethernet.

Table 15.2. Packet types that can be captured

Type	Notes
Ethernet	Interface based capture contains the full Ethernet frame with any VLAN tag removed.
IP	IP only, currently not possible to capture at this level. An Ethernet header is faked.
PPP	PPP from the protocol word (HDLC header is ignored if present). An Ethernet header is faked and also a PPPoE header. The PPPoE header has the session PPPoE ID that is the local end L2TP session ID.

The faked protocol header has target MAC of 00:00:00:00:00:00 and source MAC of 00:00:00:00:00:01 for received packets, and these reversed for sent packets.

15.3.5. Snaplen specification

The `snaplen` argument specifies the maximum length captured, but this applies at the protocol level. As such PPP packets will have up to the `snaplen` from the PPP protocol bytes and then have fake PPPoE and Ethernet headers added.

A `snaplen` value of 0 has special meaning - it causes logging of just IP, TCP, UDP and ICMP headers as well as headers in ICMP error payloads. This is primarily to avoid logging data carried by these protocols.

15.3.6. Using the web interface

The web form is accessed by selecting the "Packet dump" item under the "Diagnostics" main-menu item. Setup the dump parameters with reference to Table 15.1 and click the "Dump" button. Your browser will ask you to save a file, which will take time to save as per the timeout requested.

15.3.7. Using an HTTP client

To perform a packet dump using an HTTP client, you first construct an appropriate URL that contains standard HTTP URL form-style parameters from the list shown in Table 15.1. Then you retrieve the dump from the FB2700 using a tool such as `curl`.

The URL is `http://<FB2700 IP address or DNS name>/pcap?parameter_name=value[¶meter_name=value ...]`

The URL may include as many *parameter name* and *value* pairs as you need to completely specify the dump parameters.

Packet capturing stops if the output stream (HTTP transfer) fails. This is useful if you are unable to determine a suitable timeout period, and would like to run an ongoing capture which you stop manually. This is achieved by specifying a very long duration, and then interrupting execution of the HTTP client using Ctrl+C or similar.

Only one capture can operate at a time. The HTTP access fails if no valid interfaces or sessions etc. are specified or if a capturing is currently running.

15.3.7.1. Example using curl and tcpdump

An example of a simple real-time dump and analysis run on a Linux box is shown below :-

```
curl --silent --no-buffer --user name:pass
'http://1.2.3.4/pcap?interface=LAN&timeout=300&snaplen=1500'
| /usr/sbin/tcpdump -r - -n -v
```

Note

Linebreaks are shown in the example for clarity only - they must not be entered on the command-line

In this example we have used username *name* and password *pass* to log-in to a FireBrick on address 1.2.3.4 - obviously you would change the IP address (or host name) and credentials to something suitable for your FB2700.

We have asked for a dump of the interface named LAN, with a 5 minute timeout and capturing 1500 byte packets. We have then fed the output in real time (hence specifying `--no-buffer` on the `curl` command) to `tcpdump`, and asked it to take capture data from the standard input stream (via the `-r -` options). We have additionally asked for no DNS resolution (`-n`) and verbose output (`-v`).

Consult the documentation provided with the client (e.g. Linux box) system for details on the extensive range of `tcpdump` options - these can be used to filter the dump to better locate the packets you are interested in.

Chapter 16. VRRP

The FB2700 supports VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol), which is a system that provides routing redundancy, by enabling more than one hardware device on a network to act as a gateway for routing traffic. Hardware redundancy means VRRP can provide resilience in the event of device failure, by allowing a backup device to *automatically* assume the role of actively routing traffic.

16.1. Virtual Routers

VRRP abstracts a group of routers using the concept of a *virtual router*, which has a *virtual IP address*. The IP address is virtual in the sense that it is associated with more than one hardware device, and can 'move' between devices automatically.

The virtual IP address normally differs from the real IP address of any of the group members, but it can be the real address of the master router if you prefer (e.g. if short of IP addresses).

You can have multiple virtual routers on the same LAN at the same time, so there is a Virtual Router Identifier (VRID) that is used to distinguish them. The default VRID used by the FB2700 is 42. You must set all devices that are part of the same group (virtual router) to the same VRID, and this VRID must differ from that used by any other virtual routers *on the same LAN*. Typically you would only have one virtual router on any given LAN, so the default of 42 does not normally need changing.

At any one time, one physical device is the *master* and is handling all the traffic sent to the virtual IP address. If the master fails, a backup takes over, and this process is transparent to other devices, which do not need to be aware of the change.

The members of the group communicate with each other using multicast IP packets.

The transparency to device failure is implemented by having group members all capable of receiving traffic addressed to the *same* single MAC address. By default a special MAC address is used, 00-00-5E-00-01-XX, where XX is the VRID.

The master device will reply with this MAC address when an ARP request is sent for the virtual router's IP address.

Since the MAC address associated with the virtual IP address does not change, ARP cache entries in other devices remain valid throughout the master / backup switch-over, and other devices are not even aware that the switch has happened, apart from a short 'black-hole' period until the backup starts routing.

When there is a switch-over, the VRRP packets that are multicast are sent from this special MAC, so network switches will automatically modify internal MAC forwarding tables, and start switching traffic to the appropriate physical ports for the physical router that is taking up the active routing role.

Note

You can disable the use of the special MAC if you wish, and use a normal FireBrick MAC. However, this can lead to problems in some cases.

16.2. Configuring VRRP

VRRP operates within a layer 2 broadcast domain, so VRRP configuration on the FB2700 comes under the scope of an `interface` definition. As such, to set-up your FB2700 to participate in a Virtual Router group, you need to create a `vrrp` object, as a child object of the `interface` that is in the layer 2 domain where the VRRP operates.

16.2.1. Advertisement Interval

A master indicates that it still 'alive' by periodically sending an advertisement multicast packet to the group members. A failure to receive a multicast packet from the master router for a period longer than three times the advertisement interval timer causes the backup routers to assume that the master router is down.

The interval is specified in multiples of 10ms, so a value of 100 represents one second. The default value, if not specified, is one second. If you set lower than one second then VRRP3 is used by default (see below). VRRP2 only does whole seconds, and must have the same interval for all devices. VRRP3 can have different intervals on different devices, but typically you would set them all the same.

The shorter the advertisement interval, the shorter the 'black hole' period, but there will be more (multicast) traffic in the network.

Note

For IPv6 VRRP3 is used by default, whereas for IPv4 VRRP2 is used by default. Devices have to be using the same version. IPv4 and IPv6 can co-exist with one using VRRP2 and the other VRRP3. Setting the same config (apart from priority) on all devices ensures they have the same version.

16.2.2. Priority

Each device is assigned a priority, which determines which device becomes the master, and which devices remain as backups. The (working) device with the highest priority becomes the master.

If using the real IP of the master, then the master should have priority 255. Otherwise pick priorities from 1 to 254. It is usually sensible to space these out, e.g. using 100 and 200. We suggest not setting priority 1 (see profiles and test, below).

16.3. Using a virtual router

A virtual router is used by another device simply by specifying the virtual-router's virtual IP address as the gateway in a route, rather than using a router's real IP address. From an IP point-of-view, the upstream device is completely unaware that the IP address is associated with a group of physical devices, and will forward traffic to the virtual IP address as required, exactly as it would with a single physical gateway.

16.4. VRRP versions

16.4.1. VRRP version 2

VRRP version 2 works with IPv4 addresses only (i.e. does not support IPv6) and whole second advertisement intervals only. The normal interval is one second - since the timeout is three times that, this means the fastest a backup can take over is just over 3 seconds. You should configure all devices in a VRRP group with the same settings (apart from their priority).

16.4.2. VRRP version 3

VRRP version 3 works in much the same way, but allows the advertisement interval to be any multiple of 10ms (1/100th of a second). The default interval is still 1 second, but it can now be set much faster - so although the timeout is still 3 times the interval, this means the backup could take over in as little as 30ms.

VRRP3 also works with IPv6. Whilst IPv4 and IPv6 VRRP are completely independent, you can configure both at once in a single `vrrp` object by listing one or more IPv4 addresses *and* one or more IPv6 addresses.

VRRP3 is used by default for any IPv6 addresses or where an interval of below one second is selected. It can also be specifically set in the config by setting the attribute `version3` to the value `"true"`.

Caution

If you have devices that are meant to work together as VRRP but one is version 2 and one is version 3 then they will typically not see each other and both become master. The FB2700's VRRP Status page shows if VRRP2 or VRRP3 is in use, and whether the FireBrick is master or not.

16.5. Compatibility

VRRP2 and VRRP3 are standard protocols and so the FB2700 can work alongside other devices that support VRRP2 or VRRP3.

Note that the FB2700 has non-standard support for some specific packets sent to the VRRP virtual addresses. This includes answering pings (configurable) and handling DNS traffic. Other VRRP devices may not operate in the same way and so may not work in the same way if they take over from the FireBrick.

Chapter 17. VoIP

17.1. What is VoIP?

Voice over IP (VoIP) is simply a means of carrying voice (telephone calls) over Internet Protocol (the Internet). Instead of using pairs of wires to carry the signal electrically, the sound is sampled and converted to a sequence of bytes. This is normally what is done in the telephone exchange before the data is sent over the telephone network. The key difference with VoIP is that the bytes are placed in *packets*, typically 20ms long, and these are sent via Internet Protocol. Unlike the telephone network, IP can cause packets to be delayed, lost or even copied. It is the job of the receiving end to cope with this and produce the audio again for the recipient to hear.

The end result is that telephone calls can be made over the Internet. This can cause confusion as this is often seen simply as *free calls*. Apart from costs for Internet traffic, this is indeed true where calls do not involve the *traditional* telephone network and you control both ends, but typically you will need to subscribe to a *carrier* who can route calls to and from the *traditional* telephone network.

The FB2700's role in this is to handle the IP packets used for VoIP. It does not get involved in converting sound to, or from, packets of data, but in passing those packets of data between VoIP devices and carriers. The protocol involves complex sequences of messages for control and authentications which the FB2700 handles.

17.2. Registration and Proxies

One of the common confusions with SIP/VoIP is the way registrations work.

17.2.1. Registrar

A SIP device can *register* with a service, e.g. with the FB2700, or with a SIP carrier. This is like *logging in* and means that incoming calls are then sent to the device. The device will renew the registration periodically to stay *logged in*, and if it fails to do this then incoming calls will fail.

This process uses a *username* and *password* for security. Obviously you also have to say where to register, the *proxy* specifies IP address or host name of the SIP service with which you are registering, and the *registrar* defines the hostname to use in the registration.

This process works well if the service does not have a fixed idea of where you are, which is normally the case for SIP handsets. Even on a local network the IP of the handset will normally be dynamically allocated with DHCP, and for a SIP carrier the IP could be anywhere in the world.

Note

It is possible to have a VoIP carrier that does have a pre-set idea of where calls are to be sent, and sends the calls without registration. In this case there is no registration process but the handset/device has to be able to accept calls from the carrier. Again, a *username* and *password* are used for security, but this time it is the device checking the credentials of the carrier.

17.2.2. Proxy

To make an outgoing call via a SIP carrier you have to send the call details to a *proxy*. In the case of the FB2700 acting as the carrier, the same address is used for registrar and proxy.

The process uses a *username* and *password* in much the same way as registration, and they are usually the same details. This checks that the device is allowed to make the calls, and allows right person to be billed for the call.

Tip

You can have a case of incoming calls working and not outgoing, which means registration has worked but somehow you have incorrect proxy details. The other way around, where outgoing calls work and

incoming do not would mean the registration is not working, but the proxy details are correct. The logging options can be very useful to help diagnose problems.

17.3. Home/office phone system

The FB2700 can be used as an *office phone system* (PABX) which allows you to connect a number of handsets (telephones) in your office, and make and receive calls from the telephone number using a subscription to a *carrier* over the Internet.

Traditionally a PABX would connect to one or more telephone lines, whether analogue or ISDN, and to a number of telephone handsets. The PABX would allow internal calls (handset to handset) and external calls to and from the external phone lines. It would have features like *busy lamp fields* and *hunt groups*.

The FB2700 does the same job as a traditional PABX, but using IP.

- Instead of phone lines or ISDN, the external calls are handled via an Internet Provider (ISP) and a VoIP carrier. This can allow many calls and phone numbers to be used, and is generally a lot more scalable and flexible than traditional phone lines.
- Instead of internal phone wiring to connect telephone handsets, the FB2700 connects to handsets via the office LAN network. This can be the same network as used for PCs, or separate, or segregated using VLANs.
- Instead of analogue phones, or special *system phones* for a PABX, the FB2700 works with any standard SIP VoIP phones. There are a wide range of phones available in a range of price brackets. The FireBrick has been tested well with snom phones, including features such as *busy lamp field* lights and buttons.
- The FB2700 scales well to support hundreds of phones in an office without needing extra FireBrick hardware. This makes the FireBrick a much more scaleable and economical PABX solution than traditional systems.
- It is possible to configure remote handsets, e.g. for home workers, connecting over the Internet.

The FB2700 can work with *trunk* carriers where one login/connection is used to carry many calls to different numbers, or it can appear to the carrier(s) as multiple separate VoIP devices, or any combination. This allows the FB2700 to be used with almost any VoIP carrier.

17.4. Network Address Translation

Network Address Translation (NAT) is common on many Internet connections in homes and offices. It means that the office uses *private* IP addresses (e.g. 192.168.1.1) and these are mapped (translated) to one external address.

NAT is known to cause a lot of problems with a wide variety of applications and protocols. One of those that suffers a lot from the problems of NAT is VoIP. There are, sometimes, ways of making this work, but it usually a compromise of some sort and prone to problems.

The FB2700 provides some key ways to tackle the issues of NAT.

- An FB2500/FB2700 can be used as a gateway device in a home or office - using PPPoE to connect to the Internet. This means the FireBrick has a *real* external IP address without NAT. The FireBrick can then connect to SIP handsets on the LAN using private IP addresses. The FireBrick provides a gateway for VoIP with no NAT implications.

Note

Some ISPs may start using Carrier Grade NAT (CGNAT), and so a *real* IP address may involve additional cost.

- The FireBrick can make use of the current Internet Protocol (IPv6). At present there are few carriers and handsets that work with IPv6, but this is improving all of the time. IPv6 avoids the need for NAT. The

FireBrick acts as a media gateway which makes firewalling rules simple even when using IPv6, and allows IPv4 and IPv6 devices to interwork with no problems.

- The FireBrick, when acting as a call server outside of any NAT connected telephones, can handle cases where devices are behind a simple port mapping NAT which has a timeout of at least 60 seconds. It recognises REGISTER and INVITE requests that appear to be behind NAT and will treat the requester IP/port as the contact rather than the stated contact in the message. At RTP level it will send all audio to the same IP and port from which it is received rather than the endpoint defined in the SDP. Registrations that seem to be from NAT connections will receive a null UDP packet at approximately 60 second intervals to keep the control session open on the NAT router. This is not foolproof but works in most cases with simple NAT gateways (including where a FireBrick is doing the NAT). It obviously also works where a NAT device is doing full ALG and changing the control messages and RTP accordingly.

17.5. Number plan

When setting up an office phone system you need to consider *extension numbers*. These are short numbers, typically 2, 3, or 4 digits used to call other telephones on the same system. You can use these numbers to call other extensions, and importantly, use them in configuration of *hunt groups* and so on, making the config easier to understand.

In addition to an *extension numbers* you would normally set a `ddi` (Direct Dial In) full phone number for each telephone. This is not a requirement and you can just use internal numbers for phones if you prefer.

It is a good idea to make a clear plan for how you will allocate the internal numbers, especially if you have a corresponding block of *real* phone numbers. Consider which are *nice* numbers you may want to publish for some reason, and which could be obvious mis-dials. Maybe group extensions by department, etc. Always assume you will need more numbers later so make a plan that allows for expansion.

Tip

It is a good idea to get a block of telephone numbers from your carrier, and use extension numbers that are the last 2 or 3 digits from that block. That means everyone knows the full phone number for any extension. Most carriers can provide a block of numbers. You can then configure these as the DDI (Direct Dial In) numbers for each telephone.

Note

Extension numbers can be any length you like. They should be kept short so they are not confused with local telephone numbers and are easy to dial. There is no need to dial 9 for an outside line as VoIP phones send the whole number when you dial. The only special cases are emergency numbers (112 and 999 by default) which cannot be used as extension numbers.

Note

DDI (Direct Dial In) telephone numbers must be entered in the full international format. This is a plus (+) then the country code, and area code, and number. e.g. +441234567890 which is country code 44 for UK, area code 1234 and local number 567890. In the UK you would dial this as 01234567890. Note that there is no 0 in from the of the area code when quoted in *international* format, and definitely no (0) in such numbers.

17.6. Telephone handsets

A VoIP handset which supports SIP will normally work with the FB2700. Most makes of handset actually allow multiple *identities* on the handset so it can appear as multiple handsets to one or more phone systems, but a typical installation will not normally need more than on identity per handset.

On the handset you will need to set a *registrar* and/or *proxy* which is usually either a host name or an IP address. This will need to refer to the FB2700's address.

The handset will also have some form of *login* or *username* and a *password*. Typically you would use the extension number or DDI as the username, but in an office PABX you may want people's names as the user name.

On the FB2700 you add a telephone configuration object (VoIP users) for each telephone, specifying a *username* and *password*. If the handset will need to connect from somewhere that is not on the local network (LAN) then you also need to set `local-only` to `false`.

You also need to set the `extn` and `ddi` for the phone. Also, in order to make external calls you need to select a `carrier` to use.

Tip

There are a number of other settings which can be useful. The *display-name* will show the caller name on internal calls. You can also limit the number of concurrent calls. Some other features are described in corresponding sections below.

The VoIP status page shows the active registrations from handsets.

Tip

The `log-register` and `log-register-debug` settings can provide a lot of information about registrations and help diagnose any problems.

17.7. VoIP call carriers

A VoIP carrier is a service provider that can accept outgoing calls, and route incoming calls. Typically a VoIP carrier is expecting a *handset* to register with the carrier, and will then send calls to the registered device. It is also possible for a VoIP carrier to send calls to the FB2700 using a fixed pre-set configuration.

To set up a VoIP carrier where the FB2700 registers with the carrier you need to specify the `registrar` attribute. This can be a host name or IP address. You also need to specify the `username` and `password`. For incoming calls you need to specify the `extn` that is logically dialled when a call comes in from this carrier - this can be the extension number of a telephone or hunt group.

To set up a VoIP carrier for outgoing calls you need to specify the `proxy`. This can be a host name or IP address. You also need to specify the `username` and `password`.

For a carrier that sends calls to the FB2700 without registration, you will need to set the `to` attribute to either the full address used in the *To:* of the incoming connections, or at least the *@domain* part. If calls can come in to multiple numbers, you also need to set the `incoming-format` so that calls can be routed. In this case the `username` and `password` can be specified and are used to validate the credentials of the incoming call.

17.8. Hunt groups

The basic idea of a *hunt group* is simple: It has a number, which when called causes a number of extensions to be rung, perhaps in order, to *hunt* for someone to take the calls. In practice there are a number of options as to how the hunt group works.

Creating a hunt group involves picking an extension number. In the same way as a telephone user is set up, you can also set a display name, and DDI number.

The main set of numbers that the hunt group will call is specified in the `ring` attribute. By default this causes all of the numbers listed to be rung at once.

Tip

You can list internal extension numbers for `ring` and `overflow` lists, or you can include full DDIs or even external phone numbers to be included.

Tip

It is possible to set a wrap up time on a phone (a per telephone setting), which stops group calls ringing the phone for a period of time after the call ends. This is to allow notes to be made, etc, after the call.

17.8.1. Ring Type

You can specify a different type of ringing rather than just ringing all phones at once:

Table 17.1. Ring Type

Type	Operation
all	Ring all phones at once
cascade	Ring phones in a sequence, but do not stop ringing existing phones when starting to ring the next one
sequence	Ring phones in a sequence, ringing one phone at a time

You can set the timing used for calls to progress through the list of phones.

17.8.2. Ring order

When not ringing all phones at once, you can control the order they are rung:

Table 17.2. Ring Order

Order	Operation
strict	Use the order you have listed the phones, starting from the first phone each time the hunt group is called
random	Use a random order
cyclic	Ring in order that you have listed, but continue that pattern on the next call rather than starting again
oldest	Consider how recently a phone has been in use, and ring the oldest first. This only works with internal phones, not external numbers which are rung last

17.8.3. Overflow

You can specify an `overflow` set of phone numbers to be rung if the call has been ringing too long. You can configure how long is *too long*. When you get to overflow time all phones are rung including the overflow list.

17.8.4. Out of hours

You can set a `profile` on the hunt group, which is typically a time and day based profile. When the profile is off the hunt group does not work, or you can set a number to be rung instead as the *out of hours* number.

Tip

The ring list and overflow list cannot use the numbers of other hunt groups, but the *out of hours* number can be another hunt group number.

17.9. Call pickup/steal

By default it is possible to *pick-up* a ringing call to a telephone or hunt group by dialling a prefix (default `*`) and the *extension number* of the telephone or hunt group. This stops the call ringing the phone or hunt group and connects it to the phone that dialled the pick up code.

Tip

You can restrict which phones are allowed to pick up or steal a call in the telephone and hunt group configuration.

Using the same code you can also *steal* an active call from a telephone. This hangs up the telephone and moves the call to the phone that dialled the code.

Tip

Call stealing is useful as a sort of *reverse call transfer* which works well in an open office. Someone can say "I have a call for you on 406" and you can dial *406 to steal the call from them. This is quicker, saves them asking your extension number, and avoids putting the caller on hold. It is much like *key and lamp* systems where someone might say "There is a call for you on line 3".

17.10. Busy lamp field

Busy lamp fields are normally a light and button on a phone. The snom phones can have BLF enabled.

In your handset you set up BLF by specifying an extension number of a handset to be monitored. The busy light will typically be on solidly when in a call, or flashing when there is an incoming call ringing.

You can also subscribe to a hunt group using its extension number, this shows flashing when the hunt group has a ringing call.

Tip

Pressing a button next to the busy light will usually call that extensions. You can configure the monitored extension prefixed with the call pick up code (default *) to make the button a pickup/steal button. This is ideal to pick up a ringing call for a telephone or hunt group when the light is flashing.

Note

You can restrict who is allowed to subscribe to a phone or hunt group in the configuration.

17.11. Using RADIUS

RADIUS can be used to allow new handsets to be registered dynamically without individual configuration by using RADIUS authentication to an external RADIUS server. RADIUS is also used to make call routing decisions.

RADIUS accounting can be used to log calls as they start and end to an external RADIUS server.

Note

RADIUS for VoIP is only available on a fully-loaded model.

Tip

You have to configure each of the radius functions in the VoIP config - leaving the radius setting unset will disable use of RADIUS for that feature. There are separate configuration settings for *register*, *call* and *cdr*.

17.11.1. RADIUS accounting

RADIUS accounting logs each *call leg*, so a typical call has an incoming and outgoing leg.

- A RADIUS START message is sent when the call leg is created.
- A RADIUS INTERIM update is sent if/when the call connects (i.e. status 200).
- A RADIUS STOP message is sent when the call ends, even if it did not connect.

An interim update includes a call duration which is the time spent ringing. A final (stop) message contains a call duration which is the time from the connection of the call.

17.11.2. RADIUS authentication

RADIUS authentication is used for any challenged requests, such as REGISTER, INVITE, REFER, SUBSCRIBE, OPTIONS etc. The *Digest-Method* is always included to indicate a VoIP request and identify the type of request.

You can have a RADIUS authentication before the FireBrick challenges the requestor setting the `radius-challenge` settings, allowing a RADIUS challenge response to customise the challenge, this also happens for a non local request where the user is not recognised as a local telephone user. Otherwise the FB2700 will send a challenge automatically and only send a RADIUS authentication when the authenticated message is received.

Tip

For an unauthenticated request you can response with an Access Challenge including the parameters to challenge, but any attributes you omit will be completed automatically, so you can simply response with an empty challenge to simply confirm the FB2700 is to go ahead and do the challenge itself.

For REGISTER an accept response can include a *Called-Station-Id* attribute can be used to define the registered connection as a `tel:number` URI for call routing. Without this, the registration is not logged on the FB2700 and it is assumed the RADIUS server will record where to send calls based on the registration. The *SIP-AOR* AVP in the access request provides the Contact URI, and can be used in the reply to cause a 302 redirect response to a specified contact.

- An access request is sent to approve any SIP request such as REGISTER, SUBSCRIBE, OPTIONS, etc.
- An access request is sent to make call routing decision for INVITE and REFER.
- An access request is sent to make a call routing decision when a 3xx response is received from a connection being made to a telephone. *Acct-Terminate-Cause* specified the redirect code, e.g. 301, 302.

Access requests are made even when the request is coming from an locally configured telephone. In such cases the telephone must also pass validation against a locally configured password (if present). To identify such requests, the *User-Name* is the configured name (or extn or ddi) of the telephone user, and *Chargeable-User-Identity* attribute is set based on the configured CUI.

Access requests are made even when from a recognised carrier. In such case the carrier is validated by the FireBrick directly, and then the access request made to decide call routing. To identify such requests, the *User-Name* is the configured name of the carrier prefixed with an @ character.

Note

In the case of a telephone user, any @ characters at the start of the name are removed so that it cannot be confused with a carrier.

Note

A call can come from anywhere. An unknown request from a non local IP will send a RADIUS request before challenging the requestor so that the RADIUS server can decide if it is to challenge it or not. An Access reject with no message attribute will not send any error to a non local IP requestor - add a message to force this.

17.11.2.1. Call routing by RADIUS

To understand how call routing works you need to understand how *call legs* work. A call leg is a connection to or from the FB2700 to another SIP device. It could be a SIP carrier or a telephone. Typically there is an incoming call leg from a carrier or a phone, which needs to be authenticated, and then a call routing decision is made.

An Access Accept response can then contain the call routing attributes. This causes one or more *outgoing call legs* to be created. These would typically be ringing telephones. Once one of these legs answers the others are

cancelled and the two legs are connected together to form a call. The purpose of the routing attributes is to create these outgoing call legs, and to set up attributes such as CDRs and call recording.

Each call leg has a *CLI* (calling number), a *Dialled* number, a display *Name*, a number of *CDR* records (each of which have *CDR* and *Dialled* as well), and finally a number of email addresses for call recording.

The response attributes are processed in order. Initially the *last call leg* is the originating call. When a new outgoing leg is added, that becomes the *current call leg*.

Table 17.3. Access-Accept

AVP	No.	Usage
Calling-Station-Id	31	Replaces CLI of current call leg.
Called-Station-Id	30	Replaces Dialled number of current call leg.
User-Name	1	Replaces the Name of the current call leg.
Filter-Id	11	Adds a call recording email address to the current call leg.
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	Adds a CDR record with this CUI, and current CLI and Dialled attributes to the current call leg.
SIP-AOR	121	Creates a new outgoing call leg. See below for formats

An outgoing call leg is created for each SIP-AOR entry, and it can be in one of the following formats. Each of this can also include a number of digits and a + symbol at the start which specifies a delay before attempting to connect that outgoing leg.

- *number@carrier* which causes a call via a known carrier. The part after the @ is the name of carrier in the config. The *Dialled* number is set to the number specified, and the *CLI* is set from the originating call.
- *tel:number* which causes a call via a registered telephone. The *Dialled* number is set to the number specified, and the *CLI* is set from the originating call.
- *sip:uri* which causes a call via an arbitrary SIP URI. The *Dialled* number and *CLI* are set from the originating call.

Tip

If the originating call leg is incoming and not get been connected, a single SIP-AOR response can be provided of the format of a 3 digit response code, or *3xx:uri* where 3xx is the response code (e.g. 302) and is replaced by *sip:* and used as a *Contact* header in a 3xx response. Redirect only works on some carriers/phones and serves to redirect the incoming call away from the FB2700.

17.12. Call recording

The FB2700 supports call recording by teeing off the two way audio from a call leg and sending to a SIP endpoint. The SIP endpoint will then record the call and handle it in any way you wish.

The recording is controlled by setting an email address on a call leg. This can be configured for telephone users and set to automatically record incoming one, outgoing only, or all calls. You can also set this on a hunt group to record all incoming calls to the hunt group (attaching the recording to the calling leg).

The recording server can be any SIP endpoint, such as an asterisk box. A linux based call recording app is available to FireBrick customers for this purpose, and some VOIP carriers may offer this as a service.

Tip

If the SIP endpoint supports stereo a-law then the recording is made in stereo with each side of the conversation on a channel. The supplied call recording app makes stereo a-law WAV files, and can be configured to send these by email as each call ends.

17.13. Voicemail and IVR services

Voicemail is still in development. The FB2700 will simply pass the call to a voicemail server via SIP. This could be a local device on the network, or a service provided by a carrier. We will include a software package to run on a linux box that will save the recording.

Tip

Most VoIP carriers provide voicemail

17.14. Call Data Records

A Call Data Record (CDR) is a record that is used for charging for a call. It consists of the following which are shown in a comma separated list.

- Start time when call connected (UTC with milliseconds), or if not connected then when call created
- Duration of ringing (seconds and milliseconds)
- Duration of call (seconds and milliseconds), or minus and call status if call not connected
- Calling Line Identity
- Dialed number
- Connected number if not same as dialed number, e.g. who first answered a hunt group call
- Chargeable User Identity (CUI)

The CUI is just a string of characters. It can be set on a telephone user, but defaults to ddi, exten or name, if not set. It is typically the telephone number that should pay for the call being made.

In a simple example of a telephone calling an external number, the call comes in (inbound leg) and an outgoing call is made to the carrier (outbound leg). A CDR record is attached to the outbound leg with the telephones CUI, and the corresponding CLI and dialed number used. When the call connects the start time is set on the CDR. At the end of the call the CDR record is written out. CDR records can be logged (e.g. syslog) and send by RADIUS accounting. RADIUS accounting also carries details of each call leg (start, interim and stop), and the CDR records are contained in the final RADIUS STOP message for the call, so only in one record.

There are more complex examples, such as A calls B, and B diverts to C. When a call is diverted or transferred, the CDR for that outbound leg is moved to the new outbound leg along with any CDR for that outbound leg. This means that, in this example, you get two final CDRs, one for A to B, and one for B to C, each starting when the call connected and having the same duration.

For a transfer, e.g. A calls B, B places on hold and calls C, then B transfers call, you have the same situation, but the start times and duration of the two parts are not the same.

This stacking of CDRs is important for call billing. In these examples A only expects to pay for a call to B (which may even be free if an *internal* call). But B expects to pay for the call to C because they diverted or transferred the calls.

A CDR can be associated with an incoming call leg, this is normally set by RADIUS, or by giving a carrier a cui setting. This is *sticky* and stays with the calling leg, and is logged when the calling leg ends even if the call did not connect. Otherwise the CDR is only logged if it connects.

Note

RADIUS CDR are only available on a fully-loaded model. Log (e.g. syslog) CDRs are available on all models.

17.15. Technical details

The FireBrick operates according to well established technical standards within specific design constraints which allow it to operate efficiently handling thousands of calls.

- SIP/2.0 UDP control messages using IPv4 or IPv6 are supported up to approximately 1900 bytes (fragmented if necessary).
- The FireBrick always acts as an audio media endpoint, i.e. it is always in the media path. This minimises call routing and firewalling issues. The FireBrick uses the same IP for media and control messages on each call.
- The FireBrick always acts as a SIP protocol endpoint and not as a relaying proxy. This minimises incompatibility between end devices being a party to a call as they do not see each others protocol messages.
- Only RTP audio using a-law 20ms is supported. This is generally compatible with all carriers and devices and provides high quality audio.
- Out of band DTMF is accepted using SIP INFO or RFC2833. DTMF can be sent using RFC2833 or generated a-law in-band audio.
- Error responses to REGISTER/INVITE from non local devices are not normally sent - this is against the SIP protocols but avoids issues with port scanning systems looking for VoIP platforms. This can make diagnosis of incorrect settings harder.

The design is intended to work with all common VoIP handsets and carriers. If you experience any difficulty with a carrier or a VoIP device, please contact the FireBrick support team, ideally with a full debug log.

17.16. Custom tones

The configuration also allows customised tones to be generated. You can replace these with your own versions.

The format for a tone is either a single *tone* or a series of *duration@tone* sections. In a sequence you can use *duration* for a period of silence. A *duration* is a number and then ms and a *tone* is a *frequency* or *frequency+frequency* for mixing two tones. Each *frequency* is a number of Hz and can have a *volume* suffix which is - and a number if dB. The *tone* can be followed by ^ if you want it to be shaped (rise at start and fall at end).

Table 17.4. Default tones

Tone	Plan
silence	100ms
progress	1000ms 1000ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 1000ms
ring	1000ms 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 200ms 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 1000ms
queue	700ms 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 200ms 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 200ms 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 700ms
busy	375ms@400Hz 375ms
hold	100ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 200ms 100ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 2600ms
wait	2600ms 100ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB 200ms 100ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB
close-encounter	1000ms 300ms@588Hz^ 300ms@654Hz^ 400ms@524Hz^ 600ms@262Hz^ 1000ms@392Hz^ 1000ms
bbc	50ms 345ms@122Hz 35ms 300ms@525Hz 2000ms

1000Hz	1000Hz
--------	--------

Tip

Accessing a url on the FireBrick of `/voip/ring.wav` serves a WAV format of the tone. You can test tones using a URL like `/voip/tone.wav?100ms@1000Hz+200ms@2000Hz` but ensure you URL escape the query string.

Chapter 18. BGP

18.1. What is BGP?

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

18.2. Using BGP in an office network?

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

Chapter 19. L2TP

Layer 2 Tunnelling Protocol (L2TP) is used by ISPs to handle connections from broadband and dial-up lines. L2TP tunnels can also be used to create unencrypted point to point links between endpoints. The L2TP protocol is standard, and so allows connections between the FB2700 and other manufacturers equipment.

19.1. What is L2TP?

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.2. Incoming L2TP connections

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.3. The importance of CQM graphs

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.4. Local Authentication

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.5. Relaying L2TP connections

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.6. RADIUS Authentication and Accounting

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.7. RADIUS Control messages

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

19.8. Outgoing L2TP connections

Note

This section of the manual is still in development. Please see www.firebrick.co.uk for technical notes.

Chapter 20. IPsec

IPsec (IP Security) is a means to authenticate and encrypt traffic sent over the Internet.

20.1. What is IPsec?

There are two main aspects to IP Security: authentication and encryption.

20.1.1. Authentication

The purpose of authentication is to ensure that the packets of data are genuinely from the sender you think they are. There are a number of algorithms that can be used, but they all provide a means to validate the sender, and also to confirm that the contents of the packet have not been changed.

The authentication involves a *key* which is known only to the two ends of the communication. The key is typically a sequence of random-looking bytes, usually expressed in hex notation.

Authentication on its own does not stop someone snooping on the contents of the packets, it just makes sure that they are not tampered with and are genuinely from the sender (or someone that knows the algorithm and key).

There are actually two types of authentication - AH (Authentication Header) which authenticates the packet and some of the header fields (IP addresses), and ESP-AUTH which authenticates the encrypted payload and not the headers.

20.1.2. Encryption

The purpose of encryption is to change the data when it is sent such that nobody snooping on the packet can make sense of it. There are different algorithms, and they offer different levels of security.

The encryption similarly involves a *key* which is known only to the two ends of the communication.

Encryption does not provide authentication, but it would only be possible to correctly decrypt the packet to something meaningful if it came from the right sender (or someone knowing the algorithm and key).

20.1.3. IKE

For authentication and encryption you have to configure the correct algorithms and keys at both ends, as well as several other parameters. This is a complex business, and also has its own security implications, as you must install the same parameters, including the keys, at both ends of the link. If you use any form of communication to do this and that communication channel is not itself secure, you have potentially lost your link security. For this reason there is a protocol known as *IKE* (Internet Key Exchange) which automatically negotiates and selects algorithms, keys and other parameters, and installs them at each end of the link, using a secure channel between the two systems. Public Key Cryptographic mechanisms are used to do this (eg *Diffie-Hellman*) and this can be made secure by having the two ends of the link authenticate each other using for example *X509 certificates* or *pre-shared secrets*. It is still necessary to install these certificates or secrets, obviously, but the configuration is simpler and more secure.

IKE is not mandatory, and if not used the process of selecting the algorithms and keys to be used is known as *Manual keying*.

Note

IKE is not yet implemented

20.2. Setting up a tunnel

One of the uses of IPsec is to create a private tunnel between two places. This could be two FireBricks, or between a FireBrick and some other device such as a router, VPN box, Linux box, etc.

The tunnel allows traffic to IP addresses at the far end to be routed over the Internet in secret, encrypted at the sending end and decrypted at the receiving end.

To set up a tunnel, it is necessary to configure the IP addresses of the endpoints, the algorithms and keys to be used (currently by using manual keying) and the required routing. To set up a new IPsec tunnel configuration select "Add: New IPsec tunnel /VPN settings" on the tunnel setup page.

20.2.1. IP endpoints

The *local-ip* and *remote-ip* must both be configured. The local-ip is the source IP used by the FireBrick when sending tunnelled traffic, and the remote-ip is the IP of the device at the far end of the tunnel. You can also optionally specify an *internal-ipv4* and/or an *internal-ipv6* address. When specified, these addresses are used for the source address of the tunnelled packet when the FireBrick sends traffic it originates itself down the tunnel (unless the source address has already been specified by some other means). If these are not specified the FireBrick will use the tunnel's local-ip setting when appropriate. Note that although obviously the tunnel endpoint addresses must be the same type of address (both IPv4 or both IPv6) the traffic sent through the tunnel may be IPv4, IPv6 or a mixture of the two.

20.2.2. Manual Keying

Select the required encapsulation type - either AH (providing just authentication) or ESP (providing authentication and/or encryption). Select the required algorithms and choose appropriate keys. The key lengths depend on the selected algorithm according to the following table:

Table 20.1. IPsec algorithm key lengths

Algorithm	Bytes	Hex digits	Example
HMAC-MD5	16	32	00112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF
HMAC-SHA1	20	40	0102030405060708090A0B0C0D0E0F10111213
AES-XCBC	16	32	0F0E0C0D0B0A09080706050403020100
3DES-CBC	24	48	00112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF0011223344556677
blowfish	16	32	00112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF
AES-CBC	16	32	00112233445566778899AABBCCDDEEFF

Note that in the current implementation the same key is used for both incoming and outgoing traffic. The same keys and algorithms must be configured at the remote end of the link.

The above keys are examples only. To reduce the possibility that your link could be compromised by keys becoming known or guessed you should generate them using a source of random or pseudo-random data. On a Unix/Linux system the command `xxd` can be used in conjunction with the `/dev/random` file. For example to generate a 20-byte key the command would be:

```
xxd -len 20 -p /dev/random
```

You also need to configure an *SPI* (Security Parameter Index) for both the incoming and outgoing traffic. The SPI value is an integer from 256 to $2^{32}-1$. These are configured as *local-spi* for incoming traffic and *remote-spi* for outgoing traffic. The local-spi uniquely identifies this IPsec connection, so must be distinct for all IPsec connections on this FireBrick. The incoming SPI must match the outgoing SPI of the far end of the link, and vice-versa.

20.2.3. Routing

You must configure routing to specify which traffic the FireBrick should send out through the tunnel. The routing configuration uses the same style as used elsewhere in FireBrick configuration. A simple set of IPs and/or IP ranges can be specified in the *routes* attribute, or for more complex routing a number of separate *route* elements can be added to the tunnel config. Metrics and the routing tables to be used may also be specified.

20.2.4. Other parameters

A *graph* may be specified to monitor data through the tunnel. A *speed* may be set to rate-limit the traffic. the *mode* should be set to the default (tunnel) for normal applications. Transport-mode IPsec is used in certain situations when the traffic to be encapsulated does not have its own IP header. With the current implementation the only use of this is when it is required to provide both AH and ESP protection to encapsulated packets; AH authentication with ESP encryption can provide marginally better authentication but is rarely used. To configure this, set up an ESP tunnel with just encryption, and set up a separate AH IPsec entry in transport mode. Each must have their own separate SPIs, and the ESP entry should have the *outer-spi* field set to the local-spi of the AH entry. The AH entry should have no IPs, routing, graph or speed set.

20.3. Tunnelling to a non-FireBrick device

The FireBrick IPsec implementation should be compatible with any IPsec implementation providing manual keying, provided a common set of algorithms can be chosen. As an example, the configuration for a Linux system using the ipsec-tools package will be described.

Consider a tunnel between a FireBrick and a Linux system with the following setup:

- FireBrick has IP address 192.168.1.1, Linux system has IP address 192.168.2.2
- ESP encapsulation using HMAC-SHA1 authentication and AES-CBC encryption
- Authentication key 0123456789012345678901234567890123456789
- Encryption key 00010203040506070809101112131415
- Incoming SPI 1000, Outgoing SPI 2000
- FireBrick is providing connectivity for a local user subnet 10.1.1.0/24
- Linux system is providing connectivity for a local user subnet 10.2.2.0/24

A suitable FireBrick xml config for this would be:

```
<ipsec
  local-ip="192.168.1.1" remote-ip="192.168.2.2"
  local-spi="1000" remote-spi="2000" type="ESP"
  auth-algorithm="HMAC-SHA1"
  auth-key="0123456789012345678901234567890123456789"
  crypt-algorithm="AES-CBC"
  crypt-key="00010203040506070809101112131415"
  routes="10.2.2.0/24" />
```

A corresponding ipsec-tools config file would be:

```
flush;
```



```
spdflush;

add 192.168.2.2 192.168.1.1 esp 1000 -m tunnel
-E rijndael-cbc 0x00010203040506070809101112131415
-A hmac-sha1 0x0123456789012345678901234567890123456789;

add 192.168.1.1 192.168.2.2 esp 2000 -m tunnel
-E rijndael-cbc 0x00010203040506070809101112131415
-A hmac-sha1 0x0123456789012345678901234567890123456789;

spdadd 10.1.1.0/24 10.2.2.0/24 any
-P in ipsec esp/tunnel/192.168.1.1-192.168.2.2/require;
spdadd 10.2.2.0/24 10.1.1.0/24 any
-P out ipsec esp/tunnel/192.168.2.2-192.168.1.1/require;
```

Note that *rijndael* is the name used by ipsec-tools for the AES algorithm.

20.4. Remote connection - IPsec and L2TP

Another common configuration is remote computer connections, such as a PC or mobile phone making a VPN (Virtual Private Network) connection to a FireBrick. This is similar to a tunnel, but one end is a single device not a whole network.

The connection is made using IPsec in the same way as a tunnel, but then there is a further step using L2TP to further authenticate the device. This uses PPP to set up IP addresses so normally means routing a single IP to the device, and a default route from the device.

Note

The configuration for this is not yet complete in the FireBrick. It will involve an IPsec configuration set up for a dynamic far end, and for connection to L2TP. You then configure L2TP with local authentication (or using RADIUS) to set up the L2TP level connection.

20.5. Choice of algorithms

Both authentication and encryption allow a choice of algorithms

Tip

The fastest encryption algorithm is *Blowfish*. The fastest authentication is *null* esp-auth, but you may prefer to pick one of the authentication protocols to avoid garbage packets being decrypted and processed.

Appendix A. Factory Reset Procedure

The FireBrick has a simple factory reset process to erase the configuration allowing you to reconnect using the default IP addresses described in Chapter 2. This process can be very useful if you ever make an error in the configuration that stops you having access to the FireBrick for any reason, or any other situation where it is appropriate to start from scratch.

- Disconnect all network and power leads :-



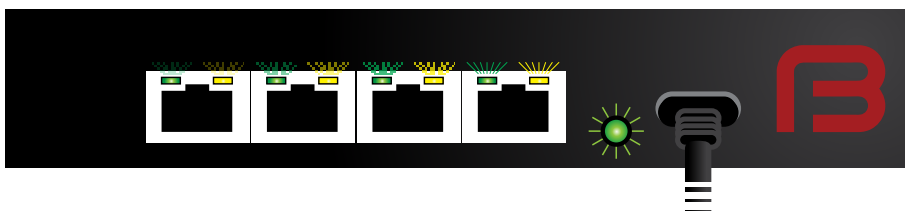
- Connect lead between far left and far right ports (ports 1 and 4) :-



- Connect power and wait a few seconds for all port LEDs to be on steadily. Power LED blinks :-



- Disconnect loop, leave power connected. LEDs cycle and power LED blinks :-



Note

There is a timeout of 20 seconds in this process - if the loop is present for longer than 20 seconds, the power LED will stop flashing and the factory reset will be aborted

- Connect network to left hand port. Power LED comes on solidly.



This process will start the FireBrick in a factory reset mode *temporarily* - the configuration stored in flash memory has not yet been altered or deleted at this stage.

If you do not save a new configuration at this stage, then the FB2700 will revert to the existing saved configuration when next powered up or restarted.

It is also possible to recover the configuration stored in flash memory, if you know an administrative username and password for it - this gives you an opportunity to correct a configuration, such as where you had made a change that prevented you from accessing the FB2700.

To factory reset permanently follow the same process but with ports 1 and 2 looped - this *will* overwrite the configuration stored in flash memory, so use this reset method with caution.

Appendix B. CIDR and CIDR Notation

Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) is a strategy for IP address assignment originally specified in 1993 that had the aims of "conserving the address space and limiting the growth rate of global routing state". The current specification for CIDR is in RFC4632 [<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4632>].

The pre-CIDR era

CIDR replaced the original class-based organisation of the IP address space, which had become wasteful of address space, and did not permit *aggregation* of routing information.

In the original scheme, only three sizes of network were possible :

- Class A : 128 possible networks each with 16,777,216 addresses
- Class B : 16384 possible networks each with 65,536 addresses
- Class C : 2097152 possible networks each with 256 addresses

Every network, including any of the large number of possible Class C networks, required an entry in global routing tables - those used by core Internet routers - since it was not possible to aggregate entries that had the same routing information. The inability to aggregate routes meant global routing table size was growing fast, which meant performance issues at core routers.

The position and size of the network ID and host ID bitfields were implied by the bit pattern of some of the most significant address bits, which segmented the 32-bit IPv4 address space into three main blocks, one for each class of network.

CIDR

The prefix notation introduced by CIDR was, in the simplest sense, "to make explicit which bits in a 32-bit IPv4 address are interpreted as the network number (or prefix) associated with a site and which are the used to number individual end systems within the site". In this sense, the 'prefix' is the N most significant bits that comprise the network ID bitfield.

CIDR notation is written as :-

IPv4 : Traditional IPv4 'dotted-quad' number, followed by the "/" (slash) character, followed by a decimal prefix-length value between 0 and 32 (inclusive)

IPv6 : IPv6 address, followed by the "/" (slash) character, followed by a decimal prefix-length value between 0 and 128 (inclusive)

Where formerly only three network sizes were available, CIDR prefixes may be defined to describe *any* power of two-sized block of between one and 2^{32} end system addresses, that begins at an address that is a multiple of the block size. This provides for far less wasteful allocation of IP address space. The size of the range is given by 2^M , where $M = 32 - \text{prefix_length}$

Routing destinations

As well as being used to define a network (subnet), the CIDR notation is used to define the *destination* in a routing table entry, which may encompass multiple networks (with longer prefixes) that are reachable by using the associated routing information. This, therefore, provides the ability to create aggregated routing table entries.

For example, a routing table entry with a destination of $10.1.2.0/23$ specifies the address range $10.1.2.0$ to $10.1.3.255$ inclusive. As an example, it might be that in practice two $/24$ subnets are reachable via this

routing table entry - 10.1.2.0/24 and 10.1.3.0/24 - routing table entries for these subnets would appear in a downstream router.

Note that in either a network/subnet or routing destination specification, the address will be the starting address of the IP address range being expressed, such that there will be M least significant bits of the address set to zero, where $M = 32 - \text{prefix_length}$

Combined interface IP address and subnet definitions

Another common use of the CIDR notation is to combine the definition of a network with the specification of the IP address of an end system on that network - this form is used in subnet definitions on the FB2700, and in many popular operating systems.

For example, the default IPv4 subnet on the LAN interface after factory reset is 10.0.0.1/24 - the address of the FB2700 on this subnet is therefore 10.0.0.1, and the prefix length is 24 bits, leaving 8 bits for host addresses on the subnet. The subnet address range is therefore 10.0.0.0 to 10.0.0.255

A prefix-length of 32 is possible, and specifies a block size of just one address, equivalent to a plain IP address specification with no prefix notation. This is not the same as a combined subnet and interface-IP-address definition, as it only specifies a single IP address.

General IP address range specifications

CIDR notation can also be used in the FB2700 to express general IP address ranges, such as in session-rules, trusted IP lists, access control lists etc. In these cases, the notation is the same as for routing destinations or subnets, i.e. the address specified is the starting address of the range, and the prefix-length determines the size of the range.

Appendix C. MAC Addresses usage

Ethernet networks use 48 bit MAC addresses. These are globally unique and allocated by the equipment manufacturer from a pool of addresses that is defined by the first three octets (bytes), which identify the organization, and are known as the Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI). OUIs are issued by the IEEE - more information, and a searchable database of existing OUIs are available at <http://standards.ieee.org/develop/regauth/oui/>

MAC addresses are commonly written as six groups of two hexadecimal digits, separated by colons or hyphens.

FB2700s currently ship with an OUI value of 00:03:97.

In principle the FireBrick could have a single MAC address for all operations. However, practical experience has led to the use of multiple MAC addresses on the FireBrick. A unique block of addresses is assigned to each FireBrick, with the size of the block dependent on the model.

Most of the time, FB2700 users do not need to know what MAC addresses the product uses. However, there are occasions where this information is useful, such as when trying to identify what IP address a DHCP server has allocated to a specific FB2700. For information on how MAC addresses are used by the FB2700, please refer to this article on the FireBrick website [<http://www.firebrick.co.uk/fb2700/mac.php>]

The label attached to the bottom of the FB2700 shows what MAC address range that unit uses, using a compact notation, as highlighted in Figure C.1 :-

Figure C.1. Product label showing MAC address range



In this example, the range is specified as :-

000397:147C-F

this is interpreted as :-

- All addresses in the range start with 00:03:97:14:7
- the next digit then ranges from "C" through to "F"
 - the first address in the range has zero for the remaining digits (C:00)
 - the last address in the range has F for the remaining digits (F:FF)

Therefore this range spans 00:03:97:14:7C:00 to 00:03:97:14:7F:FF inclusive (1024 addresses). If you trying to identify an IP address allocation, note that the exact address used within this range depends on a number of factors ; generally you should look for an IP address allocation against *any* of the addresses in the range.

Alternatively, if the range specification doesn't include a hyphen, it specifies that all addresses in the range start with this 'prefix' - the first address in the range will have zero for all the remaining digits, and the last address in the range will have F for all the remaining digits. For example :-

000397:147C

is interpreted as :

- All addresses in the range start with 00:03:97:14:7C
 - the first address in the range has zero for the remaining digits (00)
 - the last address in the range has F for the remaining digits (FF)

Therefore this range spans 00:03:97:14:7C:00 to 00:03:97:14:7C:FF inclusive (256 addresses).

If your DHCP server shows the name of the client (FB2700) that issued the DHCP request, then you will see a value that depends on whether the *system name* is set on the FB2700, as shown in Table C.1. Refer to Section 4.2.1 for details on setting the system name.

Table C.1. DHCP client names used

System name	Client name used
not set (e.g. factory reset configuration)	FB2700
set	Main application software running

If the FB2700's system name is set, and your DHCP server shows client names, then this is likely to be the preferred way to locate the relevant DHCP allocation in a list, rather than trying to locate it by MAC address. If the FB2700 is in a factory-reset state, then the system name will not be set, and you will have to locate it by MAC address.

Appendix D. VLANs : A primer

An Ethernet (Layer 2) broadcast domain consists of a group of Ethernet devices that are interconnected, typically via switches, such that an Ethernet broadcast packet (which specifies a reserved broadcast address as the destination Ethernet address of the packet) sent by one of the devices is always received by all the other devices in the group. A broadcast domain defines the boundaries of a single 'Local Area Network'.

When Virtual LANs (VLANs) are not in use, a broadcast domain consist of devices (such as PCs and routers), physical cables, switches (or hubs) and possibly bridges. In this case, creating a distinct Layer 2 broadcast domain requires a distinct set of switch/hub/bridge hardware, not physically interconnected with switch/hub/bridge hardware in any other domain.

A network using Virtual LANs is capable of implementing multiple distinct Layer 2 broadcast domains with *shared* physical switch hardware. The switch(es) used must support VLANs, and this is now common in cost-effective commodity Ethernet switches. Inter-working of VLAN switch hardware requires that all hardware support the same VLAN standard, the dominant standard being IEEE 802.1Q.

Such switches can segregate physical switch ports into user-defined groups - with one VLAN associated with each group. Switching of traffic only occurs between the physical ports in a group, thus isolating each group from the others. Where more than one switch is used, with an 'uplink' connection between switches, VLAN *tagging* is used to multiplex packets from different VLANs across these single physical connections.

A IEEE 802.1Q VLAN tag is a small header prefixed to the normal Ethernet packet payload, includes a 12-bit number (range 1-4095) that identifies the tagged packet as belonging to a specific VLAN.

When a tagged packet arrives at another switch, the tag specifies which VLAN it is in, and switching to the appropriate physical port(s) occurs.

In addition to VLAN support in switches, some end devices incorporate VLAN support, allowing them to send and receive tagged packets from VLAN switch infrastructure, and use the VLAN ID to map packets to multiple logical interfaces, whilst only using a single physical interface. Such VLAN support is typically present in devices that are able to be multi-homed (have more than one IP interface), such as routers and firewalls, and general purpose network-capable operating systems such as Linux.

The FB2700 supports IEEE 802.1Q VLANs, and will accept (and send) packets with 802.1Q VLAN tags. It can therefore work with any Ethernet switch (or other) equipment that also supports 802.1Q VLANs, and therefore allows multiple logical interfaces to be implemented on a single physical port.

VLAN tagged switching is now also used in Wide-Area Layer 2 Ethernet networks, where a Layer 2 'circuit' is provided by a carrier over shared physical infrastructure. The conventional concept of a LAN occupying a small geographic area is thus no longer necessarily true.

Appendix E. Supported L2TP Attribute/Value Pairs

This appendix details the L2TP protocol messages supported, and the attribute/value pairs (AVPs) which are sent and expected for each message.

E.1. Start-Control-Connection-Request

Table E.1. SCCRQ

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 1	Value 1
Protocol Version	2	Mandatory, value 1 expected	Value 1
Framing Capabilities	3	Ignored	Value 3
Bearer Capabilities	4	Ignored	Not sent
Tie Breaker	5	Ignored as FireBrick only accepts connections for inbound calls	Not sent
Firmware Revision	6	Ignored	FireBrick s/w version string
Host Name	7	Used to select which incoming L2TP configuration applies.	As per config/RADIUS request
Vendor Name	8	Ignored	FireBrick Ltd
Assigned Tunnel ID	9	Mandatory	Mandatory, our tunnel ID
Receive Window Size	10	Accepted, assumed 4 if not present or less than 4 is specified	Value 4
Challenge	11	Accepted if a configured secret is defined, a response is sent in the SCCRP	Not sent at present

E.2. Start-Control-Connection-Reply

Table E.2. SCCRP

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 2	Value 2
Protocol Version	2	Value 1 expected	Value 1
Framing Capabilities	3	Ignored	Value 3
Bearer Capabilities	4	Ignored	Not sent
Firmware Revision	6	Ignored	FireBrick s/w ID number
Host Name	7	Logged as hostname for tunnel	Configured hostname, if defined
Vendor Name	8	Ignored	FireBrick Ltd
Assigned Tunnel ID	9	Expected as far end ID	Mandatory, our tunnel ID
Receive Window Size	10	Accepted, assumed 4 if not present or less than 4	Not sent, assume 4

Challenge	11	Accepted if a configured secret is defined, a response is sent in the SCCCN	Not sent at present
Challenge Response	13	Not expected at present	Sent if SCCRQ contained a challenge and we have a secret defined

E.3. Start-Control-Connection-Connected

Table E.3. SCCCN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 3	Value 3
Challenge Response	13	Not expected	Sent if was challenged

E.4. Stop-Control-Connection-Notification

Table E.4. StopCCN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 4	Value 4
Result Code	1	Ignored (logged)	Sent as appropriate for tunnel close
Assigned Tunnel ID	9	Expected, see note	Sent if a tunnel has been allocated

Note that a StopCCN may not have a zero tunnel ID in the header. If this is the case the source IP, port and assigned tunnel are used to identify the tunnel.

If an unknown tunnel ID is received on any any incoming packet a StopCCN is generated (once per 10 seconds) with header tunnel ID 0 and specified assigned tunnel ID.

E.5. Hello

Table E.5. HELLO

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 6	Value 6

Always responded to. Sent periodically if no other messages sent.

E.6. Incoming-Call-Request

Table E.6. ICRQ

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 10	Value 10
Assigned Session ID	14	Mandatory	Mandatory, our session ID
Call Serial Number	15	Accepted and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Bearer Type	18	Ignored	Not sent
Called Number	21	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value

Calling Number	22	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Sub-Address	23	Ignored	Not sent
Physical Channel ID	25	Ignored	Not sent

E.7. Incoming-Call-Reply

Table E.7. ICRP

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 11	Value 11
Assigned Session ID	14	Mandatory	Mandatory

E.8. Incoming-Call-Connected

Table E.8. ICCN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 12	Value 12
Framing Type	19	Ignored	1
Tx Connect Speed	24	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Initial Received LCP CONFREQ	26	Ignored	Not sent
Last Sent LCP CONFREQ	27	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Last Received LCP CONFREQ	28	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Proxy Authen Type	29	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Proxy Authen Name	30	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Proxy Authen Challenge	31	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Proxy Authen ID	32	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Proxy Authen Response	33	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Private Group ID	37	Ignored	Not sent
Rx Connect Speed	38	Accepted, used in RADIUS and passed on if relaying	Passed on incoming value
Sequencing Required	39	Accepted on honoured	Not sent

E.9. Outgoing-Call-Request

Table E.9. OCRQ

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
-----	-----	----------	----------

Message Type	0	Value 7	Value 7
--------------	---	---------	---------

Not supported, ignored.

E.10. Outgoing-Call-Reply

Table E.10. OCRP

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 8	Value 8

Not supported, ignored.

E.11. Outgoing-Call-Connected

Table E.11. OCCN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 9	Value 9

Not supported, ignored.

E.12. Call-Disconnect-Notify

Table E.12. CDN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 14	Value 14
Result Code	1	Ignored (logged)	Sent as appropriate for tunnel close
Q.931 Cause Code	12	Ignored	Not sent
Assigned Session ID	14	Expected, see note	Sent if assigned

Note that a CDN may have a zero session ID in the header. If this is the case the tunnel ID and assigned session ID are used to identify the session.

If an unknown session ID on a known tunnel ID is received on any any incoming packet a CDN is generated with header session ID 0 and specified assigned session ID.

E.13. WAN-Error-Notify

Table E.13. WEN

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
Message Type	0	Value 15	Value 15

Not supported, ignored.

E.14. Set-Link-Info

Table E.14. SLI

AVP	No.	Incoming	Outgoing
-----	-----	----------	----------

Message Type	0	Value 16	Value 16
--------------	---	----------	----------

Not supported, ignored.

E.15. Notes

E.15.1. BT specific notes

The L2TP and PPP specifications are clear that the HDLC framing bytes are not sent or received within the L2TP packet. However, BT send type bytes (FF03) on the start of all PPP frames. This is silently discarded. Also, BT will not process packets if these type bytes are not included in outgoing packets. Sending the HDLC framing can be controlled in the config and on a per session basis using a Filter-Id in RADIUS authentication response.

BT sometimes negotiate incorrect MRUs on behalf of the LNS. Where the L2TP proxy details indicate and incorrect MRU has been negotiated then LCP negotiation is restarted and the correct MRU negotiates. This helps avoid various issues with fragmentation on some services on the internet when the broadband fully supports 1500 byte MTU. This is also relevant where the FB6000 is deliberately configured to use a smaller MRU for example when the L2TP connection is remote via a 1500 MTU link.

There are options using Filter-Id from RADIUS to force LCP restart. However this does confuse some ppp implementations as it is after authentication is complete. This can be useful where BT have provided an incorrect MRU for the end user (another bug). There is also an option to forward 1500 byte packets rather than fragmenting them. When enabled ICMP is still generated for DF and IPv6.

E.15.2. IP over LCP

IP over LCP is a non standard coding of PPP packets for IPv4 and IPv6. The coding uses the LCP code (C021) instead of the IPv4 (0021) or IPv6 (0057) code. The first byte which would normally be the LCP type is 0x4X (IPv4) or 0x6X (IPv6). The FireBrick assumes any such LCP codes are IPv4/IPv6 when received, and using a RADIUS response can send IP packets using LCP. This is specifically to bypass any carrier IP specific shaping or DPI.

Appendix F. Supported RADIUS Attribute/Value Pairs for L2TP operation

RADIUS is used for authentication and accounting of L2TP connections. If no authentication servers are configured then authentication is not performed. If no accounting servers are configured then no accounting is generated. Multiple servers can be configured and they are processed in order. Each can have multiple IP addresses. The IP addresses are tried based on the previous performance (response time, etc). If a server does not respond a number of times as configured then it is blacklisted for a configurable period.

It is possible to configure local configurations which are checked before any RADIUS authentication.

It is possible to configure L2TP so that RADIUS accounting must respond, and if not then the sessions are disconnected.

F.1. Authentication request

Table F.1. Access-request

AVP	No.	Usage
Message-Authenticator	80	Message signature as per RFC2869
User-Name	1	Username from authentication (PAP/CHAP) or proxy authentication received on L2TP
Called-Station-Id	30	Called number as received on L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number as received on L2TP
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session as used on all following accounting records
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	NAS IPv4 address if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	NAS IPv6 address if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	L2TP session ID
Service-Type	6	Framed
Framed-Protocol	7	PPP
CHAP-Password	3	CHAP ID and response
CHAP-Challenge	60	CHAP challenge (only present if not the same as RADIUS authenticator)
Framed-MTU	12	MTU requested by PPP, if one was requested (even if 1500)
Connect-Info	77	Text Tx speed/Rx speed from L2TP connection if known
Tunnel-Client-Endpoint	66	Indicates the L2TP tunnel configured name attribute, allowing connections via different L2TP incoming configurations to be identified

Note that the NAS-IP-Address is normally the local end of the L2TP connection for the incoming connection. However, there is a configuration option to pass the remote end of the L2TP as the NAS-IP-Address as this is often more useful. If the remote Ip is used the NAS-Port is set to the far end L2TP session ID rather than the local end session ID. The NAS-Identified remains the name of the FB6000. This option is separately available for accounting messages.

Note that the Calling-Station-Id is included even if not present in L2TP connection if a cache platform RADIUS request matched the L2TP connection and had a Calling-Station-Id.

F.2. Authentication response

F.2.1. Accepted authentication

Table F.2. Access-Accept

AVP	No.	Usage
Reply-Message	18	Reply message sent on PPP authentication response
MS-Primary-DNS-Address	311/28	Primary DNS address used in PPP IPCP (Vendor 311 specific)
MS-Secondary-DNS-Address	311/29	Secondary DNS address used in PPP IPCP (Vendor 311 specific)
Framed-Interface-ID	96	Peer IPv6 Interface ID expected in PPP IPV6CP
Framed-IP-Address	8	Peer IPv4 address expected in PPP IPCP (does not support 255.255.255.255 or 255.255.255.254 yet). Maximum localpref used.
NAS-IP-Address	4	Our end IPv4 address to in IPCP negotiation. Does not add loopback route. This is non standard.
Framed-Route	22	May appear more than once. Text format is <i>IPv4-Address/Bits 0.0.0.0 metric</i> . The target IP is ignored but must be valid IPv4 syntax. The metric is used as localpref in routing.
Delegated-IPv6-Prefix	123	IPv6 prefix to be routed to line. Maximum localpref used.
Framed-IPv6-Prefix	97	IPv6 prefix to be routed to line. Maximum localpref used.
Framed-IPv6-Route	99	May appear more than once. Text format is <i>IPv6-Address/Bits :: metric</i> . The target IP is ignored but must be valid IPv6 syntax. The metric is used as localpref in routing. Alternative format <i>IPv6/Bits IPv4-Address metric</i> defines that prefix is to be protocol 41 IPv4 tunneled to specified target via this link.
User-Name	1	Username may be specified - this replaces the username already present and is then used on accounting start and relay L2TP.
CHAP-Password	3	CHAP-Password may be specified - this replaces the CHAP ID and response that is then sent on to a tunnel.
Called-Station-Id	30	Called number may be specified - this replaces the number already present and is then used on the accounting start and relay L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number may be specified - this replaces the number already present and is then used on the accounting start and relay L2TP
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	This is used as the preferred CQM graph name.
Class	25	Secondary CQM graph name to group sessions allowing group logging or shaping.
Session-Timeout	27	Absolute limit on session, in seconds
Filter-Id	11	See filter ID section
Framed-MTU	12	Set MTU for session
Connect-Info	77	Text tx speed limit to apply to session
Tunnel-Type	64	If specified must be 3 (L2TP), L2TP is assumed

Tunnel-Medium-Type	65	If specified must be 1 (IPv4) or 2 (IPv6), syntax of endpoint is used if this is not specified
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	67	Text IPv4 or IPv6 address of endpoint (FQDN is not accepted)
Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	90	Hostname to quote on outgoing tunnel, if omitted then configured FireBrick hostname is used
Tunnel-Password	69	Shared secret to use on outgoing tunnel (encrypted), if omitted then assumed no secret
Tunnel-Assignment-ID	81	Name of outgoing tunnel shaper/graph. Also groups sessions together in a tunnel as per RFC. Only use valid text graph names.
Tunnel-Preference	83	Specifies preference order when multiple tagged endpoints sent

Note that whilst a RADIUS response is normally relatively small in can get larger when multiple tunnel endpoints are included. Fragmented responses are handled but there is an internal limit to the size of response that can be processed - as such we recommend keeping the response to a single un-fragmented packet of up to 1500 bytes. You can use tag 0 for common settings such as Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID or Tunnel-Password when using multiple endpoints in order to reduce the size of the response.

F.2.1.1. Prefix Delegation

The RADIUS authentication response can include Delegated-IPv6-Prefix, Framed-IPv6-Prefix, and Framed-IPv6-Route in order to route native IPv6 prefixes to the line. If there are any native IPv6 routes, or the Framed-IPv6-Interface attribute was specified, then IPV6CP negotiation is started. Framed-IPv6-Route can also be used to added IPv4 tunneled routes to the line. The FE80::/10 link local address negotiated with IPV6CP is not added to the routing for the line.

The client can send a Router solicitation to which the FireBrick will reply advising to use DHCPv6 for addressing. Once a router solicitation is sent, periodic Router Advertisements will then be sent on the connection by the Firebrick.

The client can use DHCPv6 to request an IA_NA (/128 link address), IA_TA (/128 temp link address), IA_PD (Prefix delegation) and DNS servers. Prefixes are delegated based on the order in the DHCPv6 request and the order of Delegated-IPv6-Prefix, Framed-IPv6-Prefix, and then Framed-IPv6-Route, with multiple such entries in the order that they appeared in the RADIUS response. Such prefixes are not split up if a smaller prefix is requested, but the first part of a prefix is delegated.

F.2.2. Rejected authentication

Table F.3. Access-Reject

AVP	No.	Usage
Reply-Message	18	Reply message sent on PPP authentication response

Note that an authentication reject will normally cause the reply message to be sent as an authentication reject message. The reply "Try another" causes the L2TP session to be closed with result/error 2/7 (Try another) without sending an authentication reply on PPP.

F.3. Accounting Start

Table F.4. Accounting-Start

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Status-Type	40	1 Start

Supported RADIUS Attribute/
Value Pairs for L2TP operation

User-Name	1	Username from authentication (PAP/CHAP) or proxy authentication received on L2TP or received in authentication response
Class	25	From authentication response if present
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	Graph name that applies, sanitised to comply with CQM graph name rules..
Called-Station-Id	30	Called number as received on L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number as received on L2TP
Service-Type	6	Framed
Framed-Protocol	7	PPP
Framed-MTU	12	Final MTU being used for session
Filter-Id	11	Filters in use
Session-Timeout	27	Absolute limit on session, in seconds, if specified in authentication reply
Framed-Interface-ID	96	Peer IPv6 Interface ID from PPP IPV6CP
Framed-IP-Address	8	Peer IPv4 address negotiated in PPP (normally from authentication response)
Connect-Info	77	Text Tx speed/Rx speed in use
Acct-Delay-Time	41	Seconds since session started
Acct-Event-Timestamp	55	Session start time (unix timestamp)
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	NAS IPv4 address if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	NAS IPv6 address if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	L2TP session ID
Tunnel-Type	64	Present for relayed L2TP sessions, L2TP
Tunnel-Medium-Type	65	Present for relayed L2TP, 1 (IPv4) or 2 (IPv6)
Tunnel-Client-Endpoint	66	Present for relayed L2TP, text IPv4 or IPv6 address of our address on the outbound tunnel
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	67	Present for relayed L2TP, text IPv4 or IPv6 address of the far end address of the outbound tunnel
Tunnel-Assignment-ID	82	Present for relayed L2TP, text local L2TP tunnel ID
Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	90	Present for relayed L2TP, local end hostname quoted by outgoing tunnel
Tunnel-Server-Auth-ID	91	Present for relayed L2TP, far end hostname quoted by outgoing tunnel

Note that most parameters are not included in interim and stop accounting records. The acct-session-id should be used by accounting servers to correlate interim and stop records with the start record. The graph name could be used, but is only available where there is a graph. If too many different graphs then that is not present. Some exceptions apply as they can be changed by a change of authorisation RADIUS request, such as Connect-Info.

F.4. Accounting Interim

Table F.5. Accounting-Interim

AVP	No.	Usage
-----	-----	-------

Supported RADIUS Attribute/
Value Pairs for L2TP operation

Acct-Status-Type	40	3 Interim-Update
Acct-Delay-Time	41	Seconds since accounting data collected
Acct-Event-Timestamp	55	Data collected time (unix timestamp)
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	Graph name that applies, sanitised to comply with CQM graph name rules..
Connect-Info	77	Text Tx speed/Rx speed in use
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	NAS IPv4 address if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	NAS IPv6 address if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	L2TP session ID
Acct-Input-Octets	42	Rx byte count
Acct-Input-Gigawords	52	Rx byte count (high 4 bytes)
Acct-Output-Octets	43	Tx byte count
Acct-Output-Gigawords	53	Tx byte count (high 4 bytes)
Acct-Input-Packets	47	Rx packet count
Acct-Output-Packets	48	Tx packet count
Tunnel-Type	64	Present for relayed L2TP sessions, L2TP
Tunnel-Medium-Type	65	Present for relayed L2TP, 1 (IPv4) or 2 (IPv6)
Tunnel-Client-Endpoint	66	Present for relayed L2TP, text IPv4 or IPv6 address of our address on the outbound tunnel
Tunnel-Server-Endpoint	67	Present for relayed L2TP, text IPv4 or IPv6 address of the far end address of the outbound tunnel
Tunnel-Assignment-ID	82	Present for relayed L2TP, text local L2TP tunnel ID
Tunnel-Client-Auth-ID	90	Present for relayed L2TP, local end hostname quoted by outgoing tunnel
Tunnel-Server-Auth-ID	91	Present for relayed L2TP, far end hostname quoted by outgoing tunnel

F.5. Accounting Stop

As accounting interim update plus

Table F.6. Accounting-Stop

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	Cause code as appropriate

Cause codes of note are 2(Lost-Carrier) which is sent if LCP echos do not reply for several seconds, and 14(Port-Suspended) which is sent if the dos-limit is exceeded on a session. For DOS handling it is recommended that subsequent authentication requests are rejected for several minutes or a fake accept is and session-timeout is used as DOS attacks usually continue until the customer is off-line.

F.6. Disconnect

A disconnect message is accepted as per RFC5176, if the session can be disconnected, and ACK is sent, else a NAK

Table F.7. Disconnect

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	This is used as CQM graph name.
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	Cause code as appropriate to be used in accounting stop message

The session is identified by Acct-Session-Id if present, else by Chargeable-User-Identity. No other identification parameters are supported. If sent then they are ignored.

F.7. Change of Authorisation

A change of authorisation message is accepted as per RFC5176

Table F.8. Change-of-Authorisation

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	This is used as CQM graph name.
Framed-Route	22	May appear more than once. Text format is <i>IPv4-Address/Bits 0.0.0.0 metric</i> . The target IP is ignored but must be valid IPv4 syntax. The metric is used as localpref in routing.
Delegated-IPv6-Prefix	123	IPv6 prefix to be routed to line. Maximum localpref used.
Framed-IPv6-Prefix	97	IPv6 prefix to be routed to line. Maximum localpref used.
Framed-IPv6-Route	99	May appear more than once. Text format is <i>IPv6-Address/Bits :: metric</i> . The target IP is ignored but must be valid IPv6 syntax. The metric is used as localpref in routing. Alternative format <i>IPv6/Bits IPv4-Address metric</i> defines that prefix is to be protocol 41 IPv4 tunneled to specified target via this link.
Session-Timeout	27	Absolute limit on session, in seconds
Terminate-Action	29	If not specified, or 0, then terminate on Session-Timeout or Quota reached, else send RADIUS Interim accounting update (not an Access Request)
Connect-Info	77	Text tx speed limit to apply to session
Filter-Id	11	See filter ID section

The session is identified by Acct-Session-Id if present, else by Chargeable-User-Identity. No other identification parameters are supported. If sent then they are ignored.

Parameters are left unchanged if not specified.

- If any route entries (IPv4 or IPv6) are present then the existing routing (apart from the PPP endpoint address) are all removed and replaced with what has been sent. To clear all routes send a framed route with a blank string. The Framed-IP-Address cannot be changed.

- To clear the session timeout send a value of 0.
- To clear outbound shaping send connect speed of "0".

No other parameters are supported, and if sent then they are ignored

F.8. Filter ID

The Filter-ID can be set in authentication response and change of authorisation. There can be many records. Each can have many filters. Each filter is of the form of a letter possibly followed by number digits. The accounting start lists relevant filters that have been set, each in a separate filter-id AVP. Unknown filters are ignored.

Table F.9. Filter-ID

Filter	meaning
Tn	Set routing table for payload traffic. This can be used for private routing, and for walled garden / credit control
An	Specify this connection is a member of a closed user group <i>n</i> (1-32767) but has normal IP access as well. This connection is not filtered by traffic can go to/from connections that are filtered in the same CUG
Rn	Specify this connection is a member of a closed user group <i>n</i> (1-32767) and is restricted to sending traffic to/from connections in the same CUG.
H	Sets the connection to send HDLC framing headers on all PPP packets. This adds 2 extra byte to the packet. This is the default setting.
h	Sets the connection not to send HDLC framing headers on all PPP packets. This is in accordance with the L2TP/PPP RFCs. This does not work on BT 21CN BRASs.
F	Sets TCP MTU fix flag which causes the MTU option in TCP SYN to be adjusted if necessary to fit MTU.
f	Sets no TCP MTU fix
M	Sets the connection to ignore the MRU. Actually, the MRU is used to generate ICMP errors for IPv6 and IPv4 with DF set, but otherwise full size packets are sent on the connection even if a lower MRU was advised. This is in accordance with the PPP RFC but breaks some routers that do not accept 1500 byte packets (e.g. PPPoE)
m	Sets the connection to fragment IPv4 packets with DF not set that are too big for the advised MRU. This is teh default
L	This is not a filter and not confirmed back on accounting start and not valid on Change of Authorisation. It forces a restart of LCP negotiation. This is useful when BRASs lie about negotiated LCP (such as BTs 21CN BRASs)
l	This is not a filter and not confirmed back on accounting start and not valid on Change of Authorisation. It stops an LCP negotiation restart that may be planned, e.g. due to an MRU mismatch.
X	Pad packets to 74 bytes if length fields appears to be less - needed to work around bug in BT 20CN BRAS for IPv6 in IP over LCP mode
C	Send all IPv4 and IPv6 using the LCP type code (only works if FireBrick doing PPP at far end)
O	Mark session as <i>low-priority</i> (see shaper and damping)
P	Mark session as <i>premium</i> (see shaper and damping)
Sn	Set LCP echo rate to <i>n</i> seconds (default 1)
sn	Set LCP timeout rate to <i>n</i> seconds (default 10)
bn	Disable anti-spoofing source filtering

q[+]/n	Specify [or add to] quota for tx bytes. Use either q or Q. Action depends on Terminate-Action.
Q[+]/n	Specify [or add to] quota for total (tx+rx) bytes.

For change of authorisation the absence of a filter has no effect. To set normal routing table 0 zero, send T0.
To set not a member of a CUG send A0.

F.9. Notes

F.9.1. L2TP relay

L2TP relay means that an incoming call (ICRQ) is relayed to another L2TP endpoint. The decision of which calls to relay to what endpoint can be made in one of two ways:-

- Configured pattern match based on calling number, called number, or login.
- RADIUS response to initial authentication request advising new endpoint for connection.

A test is made against the config on the initial connection based on known data. This is calling number (if present), called number (if present) and login (proxy_auth_name if present). If a match is found the call is relayed with no additional PPP packets exchanged.

If there is no proxy LCP provided, or the provided negotiation conflicts with the configuration, then LCP negotiation is completed.

If there is no proxy authentication, PPP authentication is start until a response/login is received from the peer (assuming authentication is required in the config).

At this point a further check is made for a configured relay which can now be based on a login if one was not present before.

RADIUS authentication is completed, and if the response indicates a relay then the call is relayed.

The relayed call includes the incoming call parameters, and any LCP and authentication parameters that may have been negotiated at that point.

F.9.2. LCP echo and CQM graphs

Depending on configuration, LCP echos are faked both ways from the FireBrick, and LCP echos are generated by the FireBrick and responses checked. This allows the CQM graphs to be created. The graph is only created for the outgoing part of the connection. If not configured to fake LCP echos, then these are passed through as normal and no graph is created.

Each session gets a CQM graph which uses one second LCP requests and produces detailed loss/latency graphs for the session. The graph name is picked based on the first available of :-

- Chargeable-User-Identity sent in the RADIUS authentication response.
- Calling-Station-Id from L2TP.
- User-name in RADIUS authentication response.
- Proxy-Auth-Name from L2TP.
- Negotiated user name from PAP/CHAP.

If a second session starts with the same graph name as an existing session then the existing session is cleared with cause 13(Preempted). It is recommended that a unique circuit ID is passed as the Chargeable-User-Identity in the authentication response to allow simple location of graphs.

F.9.3. IP over LCP

IP over LCP is a non standard coding of PPP packets for IPv4 and IPv6. The coding uses the LCP code (C021) instead of the IPv4 (0021) or IPv6 (0057) code. The first byte which would normally be the LCP type is 0x4X (IPv4) or 0x6X (IPv6). The FireBrick assumes any such LCP codes are IPv4/IPv6 when received, and using a RADIUS response can send IP packets using LCP. This is specifically to bypass any carrier IP specific shaping or DPI.

F.9.4. Closed User Group

Each session can have a CUG defined (1-32768) which may be *allow* or *restrict*. Interfaces (port/VLAN) may also be defined in the same way. A packet from an interface/session with a CUG is tagged with that packet. If the source is restricted that packet can only leave via an interface/session with the same CUG. Similarly if the target interface/session is restricted than only a packet tagged with the same CUG can be sent to it.

F.9.5. Routing table

The FireBrick operates independent routing cores allowing a totally independent routing table to be used for L2TP wrapper traffic and payload traffic. It is also possible to set the payload table in use on a per session basis from RADIUS thus allowing a *walled garden* to be set up, or a private network, or simple an unusable session.

Appendix G. Supported RADIUS Attribute/Value Pairs for VoIP operation

RADIUS is used to authenticate REGISTRATION requests allowing registration of telephones. It is also used to authenticate INVITE requests and provide call routing information.

RADIUS Accounting is used to provide details of calls in progress.

G.1. Authentication request

Authentication requests are used for SIP requests where the request is to be challenged, e.g. REGISTER, INVITE, REFER, SUBSCRIBE, OPTIONS, etc.

The format mostly follows RFC5090. There is an option (radius-challenge) to send the RADIUS authentication request before receiving authentication data from the requestor, which allows progress without authentication credentials, but more likely to be used to send a ACCESS_CHALLENGE response to customise the challenge sent to the requestor.

Table G.1. Access-request

AVP	No.	Usage
User-Name	1	Name of locally configured telephone user, or @ and locally configured carrier name
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	If request relates to locally configured telephone user or carrier
Message-Authenticator	80	Message signature as per RFC2869
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number derived from headers
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	Requestor IPv4 address if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	Requestor IPv6 address if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	Requestor UDP port
Digest-Response	103	Digest Response
Digest-Realm	104	Digest Realm
Digest-Nonce	105	Digest Nonce
Digest-Method	108	Digest Method
Digest-URI	109	Digest URI
Digest-QOP	110	Digest QOP
Digest-Algorithm	111	Digest Algorithm
Digest-CNonce	113	Digest CNonce
Digest-Nonce-Count	114	Digest Nonce Count (NC)
Digest-Username	115	Digest Username
Digest-Opaque	116	Digest Opaque
SIP-AOR	121	Contact URI

Session-Timeout	27	Time from Expires header
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	Only sent for a redirect call routing, the redirect code, e.g. 301/302

G.2. Authentication response

G.2.1. Challenge authentication

Table G.2. Access-Challenge

AVP	No.	Usage
Digest-Realm	104	Digest Realm
Digest-Nonce	105	Digest Nonce
Digest-QOP	110	Digest QOP
Digest-Algorithm	111	Digest Algorithm
Digest-Opaque	116	Digest Opaque

G.2.2. Accepted authentication (registration)

Table G.3. Access-Accept

AVP	No.	Usage
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number to be set up for tel:number routing to this registration
Session-Timeout	27	Time to send in reply Expires header
SIP-AOR	121	SIP URI Contact for 302 redirect response.

G.2.3. Accepted authentication (invite)

Note that this section is not yet complete

Table G.4. Access-Accept

AVP	No.	Usage
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	Identity to be used on accounting records
Calling-Station-Id	31	Overrides CLI to use on this call, Anonymous will flag as withheld CLI
Called-Station-Id	30	Overrides Dialed number of this call.
User-Name	1	Replaces the Name of the this call.
Filter-Id	11	Adds a call recording email address to this call.
SIP-AOR	121	Creates a new outgoing call leg.

See Section 17.11.2.1 for details of call routing.

G.2.4. Rejected authentication

Table G.5. Access-Reject

AVP	No.	Usage
-----	-----	-------

Reply-Message	18	Reply message sent in SIP response
---------------	----	------------------------------------

The reply message is included in a Warning heading.

G.3. Accounting Start

Table G.6. Accounting-Start

AVP	No.	Usage
Called-Station-Id	30	Called number as received on L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number as received on L2TP
Acct-Status-Type	40	1 Start
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Acct-Event-Timestamp	55	Time call started trying
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	Far end IPv4 address for SIP if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	Far end IPv6 address for SIP if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	Far end UDP port for SIP

G.4. Accounting Interim

Table G.7. Accounting-Interim

AVP	No.	Usage
Called-Station-Id	30	Called number as received on L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number as received on L2TP
Acct-Status-Type	40	1 Start
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Acct-Event-Timestamp	55	Time call answered
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	Far end IPv4 address for SIP if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	Far end IPv6 address for SIP if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	Far end UDP port for SIP

Note

If the call is connected to another call leg then a second *Acct-Session-Id* is included with details of the linked call leg.

G.5. Accounting Stop

As accounting interim update plus

Table G.8. Accounting-Stop

AVP	No.	Usage
-----	-----	-------

Supported RADIUS Attribute/
Value Pairs for VoIP operation

Called-Station-Id	30	Called number as received on L2TP
Calling-Station-Id	31	Calling number as received on L2TP
Acct-Status-Type	40	1 Start
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	Cause code as appropriate
Acct-Event-Timestamp	55	Time call ended
Chargeable-User-Identity	89	CUI for this call
NAS-Identifier	32	Configured hostname of FireBrick
NAS-IP-Address	4	Far end IPv4 address for SIP if using IPv4
NAS-IPv6-Address	95	Far end IPv6 address for SIP if using IPv6
NAS-Port	5	Far end UDP port for SIP

G.6. Disconnect

A disconnect message is accepted as per RFC5176, if the session can be disconnected, and ACK is sent, else a NAK

Table G.9. Disconnect

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session
Acct-Terminate-Cause	49	SIP response code

G.7. Change of Authorisation

A change of authorisation message is accepted as per RFC5176

Table G.10. Change-of-Authorisation

AVP	No.	Usage
Acct-Session-Id	44	Unique ID for session

Appendix H. Command line reference

H.1. General commands

H.1.1. Trace off

```
troff
```

Stop interactive logging to this CLI session, lasts until logout or **tron**.

H.1.2. Trace on

```
tron
```

Restart interactive logging to this CLI session. Some types of logging can be set to log to *console* which shows on the CLI.

H.1.3. Uptime

```
uptime  
show uptime
```

Shows how long since the FB2700 restarted.

H.1.4. General status

```
show status
```

Shows general status information, including uptime, who owns the FireBrick, etc. This is the same as the Status on the web control pages.

H.1.5. Memory usage

```
show memory
```

Shows memory usage summary.

H.1.6. Process/task usage

```
show tasks
```

Shows internal task list. This is mainly for diagnostics purposes.

H.1.7. Login

```
login
```

Normally when you connect you are prompted for a username and password. If this is incorrect you can use the **login** to try again.

H.1.8. Logout

```
logout
quit
exit
```

You can also use **Ctrl-D** to exit, or close the connection (if using telnet)

H.1.9. See XML configuration

```
show run
show configuration
```

Dumps the full XML configuration to the screen

H.1.10. Load XML configuration

```
import configuration
```

You then send the XML configuration, ending with a blank line. You would not normally import a configuration using this command, as you can use the web interface, and tools like **curl** to load configurations. This command is provided as a last resort for emergency use, so use with care.

H.1.11. Show profile status

```
show profiles
```

Shows profiles and current status.

H.1.12. Show RADIUS servers

```
show radius
show radius <IPAddr>
```

Shows details of RADIUS servers currently in use

H.1.13. Show DNS resolvers

```
show dns
```

Shows current DNS resolver list and status.

H.2. Networking commands

H.2.1. Subnets

```
show subnets
show subnet <integer>
```

You can list all current subnets, or details of a specific subnet. This shows the same information as the web status pages for subnets.

H.2.2. Ping and trace

```
ping <IPNameAddr> [table=<rouetable>] [source=<IPAddr>]
    [gateway=<IPAddr>] [flow=<unsignedShort>]
    [count=<positiveInteger>] [ttl=<unsignedByte>]
    [size=<unsignedShort>] [xml=<boolean>]
traceroute <IPNameAddr> [table=<rouetable>] [source=<IPAddr>]
    [gateway=<IPAddr>] [flow=<unsignedShort>]
    [count=<positiveInteger>] [ttl=<unsignedByte>]
    [size=<unsignedShort>] [xml=<boolean>]
```

This sends a series of ICMP echo requests (ping) to a specified destination and confirms a response is received and the round trip time. For the **traceroute** variant, the TTL/Hopcount is increased by one each time to show a series of response hops. There are a number of controls allowing you to fine tune what is sent. Obviously you should only send from a *source* address that will return to the FB2700 correctly. You can also ask for the results to be presented in an XML format.

Where possible, the reverse DNS name is shown next to replies, but there is (deliberately) no delay waiting for DNS responses, so you may find it useful to run a trace a second time as results from the first attempt will be cached.

H.2.3. Show a route from the routing table

```
show route <IPPrefix> [table=<rouetable>]
```

Shows details of a route in the routing table. Where an individual IP is used, the route that would be used is shown, but if a specify prefix is used then that specific route is shown even if there may be more specific routes in use.

H.2.4. List routes

```
show routes [<IPFilter>] [table=<rouetable>]
```

Lists routes in the routing table, limited to those that match the filter if specified.

H.2.5. List routing next hops

```
show route nexthop [<IPAddr>]
```

List the next hop addresses currently in use and their status.

H.2.6. See DHCP allocations

```
show dhcp [<IP4Addr>] [table=<rouetable>]
```

Shows DHCP allocations, with option to show details for specific allocation.

H.2.7. Clear DHCP allocations

```
clear dhcp [ip=<IP4Range>] [table=<rouetable>]
```

Allows you to remove one or more DHCP allocations.

H.2.8. Lock DHCP allocations

```
lock dhcp ip=<IP4Addr> [table=<routetable>]
```

Locks a DHCP allocation. This stops the allocation being used for any other MAC address even if long expired.

H.2.9. Unlock DHCP allocations

```
unlock dhcp ip=<IP4Addr> [table=<routetable>]
```

Unlocks a DHCP allocation, allowing the address to be re-used if the expired.

H.2.10. Name DHCP allocations

```
name dhcp ip=<IP4Addr> [name=<string>] [table=<routetable>]
```

Allows you to set a name for a DHCP allocation, overriding the clientname that was sent.

H.2.11. Show ARP/ND status

```
show arp  
show arp <IPAddr>
```

Shows details of ARP and Neighbour discovery cache.

H.2.12. Show VRRP status

```
show vrrp
```

Lists all VRRP in use and current status.

H.2.13. Send Wake-on-LAN packet

```
wol interface=<string> mac=<hexBinary>
```

Send a wake-on-LAN packet to a specific interface.

H.3. Firewalling commands

H.3.1. Check access to services

```
check access <IPAddr> [table=<routetable>]
```

Reports access control checks for a source address to various internal services. This is separate from any firewalling.

H.3.2. Check firewall logic

```
check firewall source-ip=<IPAddr> target-ip=<IPAddr>
```

```
protocol=<unsignedByte> [source-port=<unsignedShort>]  
[target-port=<unsignedShort>] [source-route-ip=<IPAddr>]  
[table=<routetable>] [evil=<boolean>] [cug=<unsignedShort>]
```

Allows a detailed check of rule-sets and rules. This reports the rule-sets and rules that matched and the actions taken.

H.4. USB/dongle commands

H.4.1. Show dongle connectoons

```
show dongle  
show dongle <string>
```

Lists dongle data connections in use or shows details of a specific connection.

H.4.2. Reset USB interface and all attached devices

```
clear usb
```

Resets USB port and attached devices. This is useful if a device has *locked up* somehow.

H.4.3. Reset PPP/Dongle data connection

```
clear dongle <string>
```

Resets the data connection on a specified dongle. The dongle will then restart connection automatically.

H.5. L2TP commands

Note

This command summary is not yet complete, please see www.firebrick.co.uk for details

H.6. BGP commands

Note

This command summary is not yet complete, please see www.firebrick.co.uk for details

H.7. PPPoE commands

Note

This command summary is not yet complete, please see www.firebrick.co.uk for details

H.8. VoIP commands

Note

This command summary is not yet complete, please see www.firebrick.co.uk for details

H.9. Dongle/USB commands

Note

This command summary is not yet complete, please see www.firebrick.co.uk for details

H.10. Advanced commands

Some commands are only available when logged in as a user set with *DEBUG* level access.

H.10.1. Panic

```
panic [<string>] [confirm=<string>]
```

This causes the FB2700 to crash, causing a *panic* event with a specified message. You need to specify **confirm=yes** for the command to work. This can be useful to test fallback scenarios by simulating a fatal error. Note that panic crash logs are emailed to the FireBrick support by default, so please use a meaningful string. e.g. **panic "testing fallback" confirm=yes**

H.10.2. Reboot

```
reboot [<unsignedInt>] [hard] [confirm=<string>]
```

A reboot is a more controlled shutdown and restart, unlike the **panic** command. The first argument is a block number (see **show flash contents**) and forces reboot to run a specific software stored in flash. Normally the reboot will run the latest valid code. The **hard** option forces the reboot to clear the Ethernet ports and other hardware so takes a couple of seconds. You must specify **confirm=yes** for this to work.

H.10.3. Screen width

```
set command screen width <unsignedInt>
```

This allows you to set the screen width.

H.10.4. Make outbound command session

```
start command session <IPAddr> [port=<unsignedShort>] [table=<routetable>]
```

This allows a *reverse telnet* connection to be made. A TCP connection is made to the IP address (and port) where a user can login. This can be useful where a firewall policy prevents incoming access to allow someone to have access from outside, e.g. the FireBrick support team.

H.10.5. Show command sessions

```
show command sessions
```

The FB2700 can have multiple telnet connections at the same time. This lists all of the current connections.

H.10.6. Kill command session

```
kill command session <IPAddr>
```

You can kill a command session by IP address. This is useful if you know you have left a telnet connected from somewhere else. Telnet sessions usually have a timeout, but this can be overridden in the configuration for each user.

H.10.7. Flash memory list

```
show flash contents
```

Lists the content of flash memory - this includes various *files* such as software releases, configuration, and so on. Multiple copies are usually stored allowing you to delete a later version if needed, and *roll-back* to an older version.

H.10.8. Delete block from flash

```
delete config <unsignedInt> [confirm=<string>]
delete data <unsignedInt> [confirm=<string>]
delete image <unsignedInt> [confirm=<string>]
```

Delete a block from flash memory. This cannot be undone. You have to specify the correct type of block, and specify **confirm=yes** for the command to work.

H.10.9. Boot log

```
show boot log [<unsignedInt>]
```

Show log of recent boots. You can specify the number of bytes of recent log to show.

H.10.10. Flash log

```
show flash log [<unsignedInt>]
```

The logging system can log to flash for a permanent record. This is done automatically for some system events and when booting. You can specify the number of bytes of recent log to show..

Appendix I. Configuration Objects

This appendix defines the object definitions used in the FireBrick FB2700 configuration. Copyright © 2008-13 FireBrick Ltd.

I.1. Top level

I.1.1. config: Top level config

The top level config element contains all of the FireBrick configuration data.

Table I.1. config: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
patch	integer	-	Internal use, for s/w updates that change config syntax
timestamp	dateTime	-	Config store time, set automatically when config is saved

Table I.2. config: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
bgp	bgp	Optional, up to 100	BGP config
blackhole	blackhole	Optional, unlimited	Black hole (dropped packets) networks
cqm	cqm	Optional	Constant Quality Monitoring config
ethernet	ethernet	Optional, unlimited	Ethernet port settings
fb105	fb105	Optional, up to 255	FB105 tunnel settings
interface	interface	Optional, up to 8192	Ethernet interface (port-group/vlan) and subnets
ip-group	ip-group	Optional, unlimited	Named IP groups
ipsec	ipsec	Optional, up to 255	IPsec tunnel / VPN settings
l2tp	l2tp	Optional	L2TP settings
log	log	Optional, up to 50	Log target controls
loopback	loopback	Optional, unlimited	Extra local addresses
network	network	Optional, unlimited	Locally originated networks
nowhere	blackhole	Optional, unlimited	Dead end (icmp error) networks
ping	ping	Optional, up to 100	Base ping graph settings
port	portdef	Optional, up to 4	Port grouping and naming
ppp	pppoe	Optional, up to 10	PPPoE settings
profile	profile	Optional, unlimited	Control profiles
route	route	Optional, unlimited	Static routes
route-override	route-override	Optional, unlimited	Routing override rules
rule-set	rule-set	Optional, unlimited	Firewall/mapping rules
services	services	Optional	General system services

shaper	shaper	Optional, unlimited	Named traffic shapers
system	system	Optional	System settings
usb	usb	Optional	USB and 3G/dongle settings
user	user	Optional, unlimited	Admin users
voip	voip	Optional	VoIP config

I.2. Objects

I.2.1. system: System settings

The system settings are the top level attributes of the system which apply globally.

Table I.3. system: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
contact	string	-	Contact name
dos-delay	unsignedInt	2	Interrupt DoS restoration counter, leave at default
dos-limit	unsignedInt	1000	Interrupt DoS packet limit, leave at default
intro	string	-	Home page text
location	string	-	Location description
log	string	Web/console	Log system events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log system debug messages
log-error	string	Web/Flash/console	Log system errors
log-eth	string	Web/console	Log Ethernet messages
log-eth-debug	string	Not logging	Log Ethernet debug
log-eth-error	string	Web/Flash/console	Log Ethernet errors
log-panic	string	Web logs	Log system panic messages
log-stats	string	Not logging	Log one second stats
name	string	-	System hostname
nat64	IP6Prefix	-	IPv6 NAT6/4 mapping prefix
nat64-source	IP4Addr	-	IPv6 NAT6/4 return IPv4
soft-watchdog	boolean	false	Debug - use only if advised; do not use on an unattended FireBrick
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
sw-update	autoloadtype	factory	Load new software automatically
sw-update-profile	string	-	Profile name for when to load new s/w

Table I.4. system: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
link	link	Optional, unlimited	Home page links

I.2.2. link: Web links

Links to other web pages

Table I.5. link: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
name	string	-	Link name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
text	string	-	Link text
url	string	-	Link address

I.2.3. user: Admin users

User names, passwords and abilities for admin users

Table I.6. user: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	<i>List of</i> IPNameRange	-	Restrict logins to be from specific IP addresses
comment	string	-	Comment
config	config-access	full	Config access level
full-name	string	-	Full name
level	user-level	ADMIN	Login level
name	<i>(string)</i> username	<i>Not optional</i>	User name
otp	string	-	OTP serial number
password	Password	<i>Not optional</i>	User password
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Restrict login to specific routing table
timeout	duration	5:00	Login idle timeout (zero to stay logged in)

I.2.4. log: Log target controls

Named logging target

Table I.7. log: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
colour	Colour	-	Colour used in web display
comment	string	-	Comment

console	boolean	-	Log immediately to console
flash	boolean	-	Log immediately to slow flash memory (use with care)
jtag	boolean	-	Log immediately jtag (development use only)
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Log target name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

Table I.8. log: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
email	log-email	Optional, unlimited	Email settings
syslog	log-syslog	Optional, unlimited	Syslog settings

I.2.5. log-syslog: Syslog logger settings

Logging to a syslog server

Table I.9. log-syslog: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
facility	syslog-facility	LOCAL0	Facility setting
port	unsignedShort	514	Server port
profile	string	-	Profile name
server	IPNameAddr	<i>Not optional</i>	Syslog server
severity	syslog-severity	NOTICE	Severity setting
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-ip	IPAddr	-	Use specific source IP
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number for sending syslogs

I.2.6. log-email: Email logger settings

Logging to email

Table I.10. log-email: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
delay	duration	1:00	Delay before sending, since first event to send
from	string	One made up using serial number	Source email address

hold-off	duration	1:00:00	Delay before sending, since last email
log	string	Not logging	Log emailing process
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log emailing debug
log-error	string	Not logging	Log emailing errors
port	unsignedShort	25	Server port
profile	string	-	Profile name
retry	duration	10:00	Delay before sending, since failed send
server	IPNameAddr	-	Smart host to use rather than MX
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
subject	string	From first line being logged	Subject
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table number for sending email
to	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Target email address

I.2.7. services: System services

System services are various generic services that the system provides, and allows access controls and settings for these to be specified. The service is only active if the corresponding element is included in services, otherwise it is disabled.

Table I.11. services: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
dns	dns-service	Optional	DNS service settings
http	http-service	Optional	HTTP server settings
ntp	ntp-service	Optional	NTP client settings (server not implemented yet)
radius	radius-service	Optional	RADIUS server/proxy settings
snmp	snmp-service	Optional	SNMP server settings
telnet	telnet-service	Optional	Telnet server settings

I.2.8. snmp-service: SNMP service settings

The SNMP service has general service settings and also specific attributes for SNMP such as community

Table I.12. snmp-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	Allow from anywhere	List of IP ranges from which service can be accessed
comment	string	-	Comment
community	string	public	Community string
local-only	boolean	false	Restrict access to locally connected Ethernet subnets only
log	string	Not logging	Log events

log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
port	unsignedShort	161	Service port
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.9. ntp-service: NTP service settings

The NTP settings define how the system clock is set, from what servers, and controls for daylight saving (summer time). The defaults are those that apply to the EU

Table I.13. ntp-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	Allow from anywhere	List of IP ranges from which service can be accessed
comment	string	-	Comment
local-only	boolean	true	Restrict access to locally connected Ethernet subnets only
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
ntpserver	List of IPNameAddr	ntp.firebrick.ltd.uk	List of time servers (IP or hostname) from which time may be set by ntp
poll	duration	1:00:00	NTP poll rate
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table number
tz1-name	string	GMT	Timezone 1 name
tz1-offset	duration	0	Timezone 1 offset from UTC
tz12-date	(<i>unsignedByte 1-31</i>) datenum	25	Timezone 1 to 2 earliest date in month
tz12-day	day	Sun	Timezone 1 to 2 day of week of change
tz12-month	month	Mar	Timezone 1 to 2 month
tz12-time	time	01:00:00	Timezone 1 to 2 local time of change
tz2-name	string	BST	Timezone 2 name
tz2-offset	duration	1:00:00	Timezone 2 offset from UTC
tz21-date	(<i>unsignedByte 1-31</i>) datenum	25	Timezone 2 to 1 earliest date in month
tz21-day	day	Sun	Timezone 2 to 1 day of week of change
tz21-month	month	Oct	Timezone 2 to 1 month

tz21-time	time	02:00:00	Timezone 2 to 1 local time of change
-----------	------	----------	--------------------------------------

I.2.10. telnet-service: Telnet service settings

Telnet control interface

Table I.14. telnet-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	Allow anywhere	List of IP ranges from which service can be accessed
comment	string	-	Comment
local-only	boolean	true	Restrict access to locally connected Ethernet subnets only
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
port	unsignedShort	23	Service port
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.11. http-service: HTTP service settings

Web management pages

Table I.15. http-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
access-control-allow-origin	string	-	Additional header for cross site javascript
allow	List of IPNameRange	Allow anywhere	List of IP ranges from which service can be accessed
comment	string	-	Comment
css-url	string	-	Additional CSS for web control pages
local-only	boolean	false	Restrict access to locally connected Ethernet subnets only
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
port	unsignedShort	80	Service port
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number

trusted	<i>List of IPNameRange</i>	-	List of allowed IP ranges from which additional access to certain functions is available
---------	----------------------------	---	--

I.2.12. dns-service: DNS service settings

DNS forwarding resolver service

Table I.16. dns-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	<i>List of IPNameRange</i>	Allow from anywhere	List of IP ranges from which service can be accessed
auto-dhcp	boolean	-	Forward and reverse DNS for names in DHCP using this domain
comment	string	-	Comment
domain	string	-	Our domain
local-only	boolean	true	Restrict access to locally connected Ethernet subnets only
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
profile	string	-	Profile name
resolvers	<i>List of IPAddr</i>	-	Recursive DNS resolvers to use
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable</i>	0	Routing table number

Table I.17. dns-service: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
block	dns-block	Optional, unlimited	Fixed local DNS host blocks
host	dns-host	Optional, unlimited	Fixed local DNS host entries

I.2.13. dns-host: Fixed local DNS host settings

DNS forwarding resolver service

Table I.18. dns-host: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	<i>List of IPAddr</i>	Our IP	IP addresses to serve (or our IP if omitted)
name	<i>List of string</i>	<i>Not optional</i>	Host names (can use * as a part of a domain)
profile	string	-	Profile name
restrict	<i>List of IPNameRange</i>	-	List of IP ranges to which this is served

reverse	boolean	-	Map reverse DNS as well
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
ttl	unsignedInt	60	Time to live

I.2.14. dns-block: Fixed local DNS blocks

DNS forwarding resolver service

Table I.19. dns-block: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
name	List of string	Not optional	Host names (can use * as a part of a domain)
profile	string	-	Profile name
restrict	List of IPNameRange	-	List of IP ranges to which this is served
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
ttl	unsignedInt	60	Time to live

I.2.15. radius-service: RADIUS service definition

RADIUS server and proxy definitions

Table I.20. radius-service: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
acct-port	unsignedShort	1813	Accounting UDP port
auth-port	unsignedShort	1812	Authentication UDP port
authenticator	boolean	-	Require message authenticator
backup-ip	List of IPNameAddr	-	Target IP(s) or hostname for backup L2TP connection
class	string	-	Class field to send
comment	string	-	Comment
context-name	string	-	Juniper Context-Name (SIN502)
control-port	unsignedShort	3799	Control UDP port (CoA/DM)
dummy-ip	boolean	true	Send dummy framed IP response
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	-	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
nsn-conditional	boolean	-	Only send NSN settings if username is not same as calling station id
nsn-tunnel-override-username	unsignedByte	-	Additional response for GGSN usage
nsn-tunnel-user-auth-method	unsignedInt	-	Additional response for GGSN usage

order	radiuspriority	-	Priority tagging of endpoints sent
profile	string	-	Profile name
relay-ip	List of IPAddr	-	Address to copy RADIUS request
relay-port	unsignedShort	1812	Authentication UDP port for copy RADIUS request
relay-table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	-	Routing table number for copy of RADIUS request
secret	Secret	-	Shared secret for RADIUS requests (needed for replies)
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
tagged	boolean	-	Tag all attributes that can be
target-hostname	string	-	Hostname for L2TP connection
target-ip	List of IPNameAddr	-	Target IP(s) or hostname for primary L2TP connection
target-secret	Secret	-	Shared secret for L2TP connection
test	List of IPAddr	-	List of IPs that must have routing for this target to be valid (deprecated)
tunnel-assignment-id	string	-	Tunnel Assignment ID to send
tunnel-client-return	boolean	-	Return tunnel client as radius IP

Table I.21. radius-service: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
match	radius-service-match	Optional, unlimited	Matching rules for specific responses
server	radius-server	Optional, unlimited	RADIUS server settings

I.2.16. radius-service-match: Matching rules for RADIUS service

Rules for matching incoming RADIUS requests

Table I.22. radius-service-match: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	-	Match source IP address of RADIUS request
authenticator	boolean	-	Require message authenticator
backup-ip	List of IPNameAddr	-	Target IP(s) or hostname for backup L2TP connection
called-station-id	List of string	-	One or more patterns to match called-station-id
calling-station-id	List of string	-	One or more patterns to match calling-station-id
class	string	-	Class field to send

comment	string	-	Comment
context-name	string	-	Juniper Context-Name (SIN502)
dummy-ip	boolean	true	Send dummy framed IP response
ip	<i>List of IPNameRange</i>	-	Match target IP address of RADIUS request
name	string	-	Name
nsn-conditional	boolean	-	Only send NSN settings if username is not same as calling station id
nsn-tunnel-override-username	unsignedByte	-	Additional response for GGSN usage
nsn-tunnel-user-auth-method	unsignedInt	-	Additional response for GGSN usage
order	radiuspriority	-	Priority tagging of endpoints sent
profile	string	-	Profile name
relay-ip	<i>List of IPAddr</i>	-	Address to copy RADIUS request
relay-port	unsignedShort	1812	Authentication UDP port for copy RADIUS request
relay-table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable</i>	-	Routing table number for copy of RADIUS request
secret	Secret	-	Shared secret for RADIUS requests (needed for replies)
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
tagged	boolean	-	Tag all attributes that can be
target-hostname	string	-	Hostname for L2TP connection
target-ip	<i>List of IPNameAddr</i>	-	Target IP(s) or hostname for primary L2TP connection
target-secret	Secret	-	Shared secret for L2TP connection
test	<i>List of IPAddr</i>	-	List of IPs that must have routing for this target to be valid (deprecated)
tunnel-assignment-id	string	-	Tunnel Assignment ID to send
tunnel-client-return	boolean	-	Return tunnel client as radius IP
username	<i>List of string</i>	-	One or more patterns to match username

I.2.17. radius-server: RADIUS server settings

Server settings for outgoing RADIUS

Table I.23. radius-server: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
host	<i>List of IPNameAddr</i>	<i>Not optional</i>	One or more hostname/IPs of RADIUS servers
max-timeout	duration	20	Maximum final timeout

min-timeout	duration	5	Minimum final timeout
name	string	-	Name
port	unsignedShort	From services/radius settings	UDP port
profile	string	-	Profile name
queue	unsignedInt	-	Concurrent requests over all of these servers (per type)
secret	Secret	<i>Not optional</i>	Shared secret for RADIUS requests
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	-	Routing table number
type	<i>Set of radiustype</i>	All	Server type

I.2.18. ethernet: Physical port controls

Physical port attributes

Table I.24. ethernet: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
autoneg	boolean	auto negotiate unless manual 10/100 speed and duplex are set	Perform link auto-negotiation
clocking	LinkClock	prefer-slave	Gigabit clock setting
crossover	Crossover	auto	Port crossover configuration
duplex	LinkDuplex	auto	Duplex setting for this port
flow	LinkFlow	none	Flow control setting
green	LinkLED	Link/Activity	Green LED setting
optimise	boolean	true	enable PHY optimisations
port	port	<i>Not optional</i>	Physical port
power-saving	LinkPower	full	enable PHY power saving
send-fault	LinkFault	-	Send fault status
shutdown	boolean	false	Power down this port
speed	LinkSpeed	auto	Speed setting for this port
yellow	LinkLED	Tx	Yellow LED setting

I.2.19. portdef: Port grouping and naming

Port grouping and naming

Table I.25. portdef: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Name
ports	<i>Set of port</i>	<i>Not optional</i>	Physical port(s)

profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

I.2.20. interface: Port-group/VLAN interface settings

The interface definition relates to a specific physical port group and VLAN. It includes subnets and VRRP that apply to that interface.

Table I.26. interface: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
cug	(<i>unsignedShort 1-32767</i>) cug	-	Closed user group ID
cug-restrict	boolean	-	Closed user group restricted traffic (only to/from same CUG ID)
graph	(<i>string</i>) graphname	-	Graph name
link	string	-	Interface to which this is linked at layer 2
log	string	Not logging	Log events including DHCP and related events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
mtu	(<i>unsignedShort 576-1600</i>) mtu	1500	MTU for this interface
name	string	-	Name
ping	IPAddr	-	Ping address to add loss/latency to graph for interface
port	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Port group name
profile	string	-	Profile name
ra-client	boolean	true	Accept IPv6 RA and create auto config subnets and routes
restrict-mac	boolean	-	Use only one MAC on this interface
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-filter	boolean	-	Source filter traffic received via this interface
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table applicable
vlan	(<i>unsignedShort 0-4095</i>) vlan	0	VLAN ID (0=untagged)

Table I.27. interface: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
dhcp	dhcps	Optional, unlimited	DHCP server settings
subnet	subnet	Optional, unlimited	IP subnet on the interface

vrrp	vrrp	Optional, unlimited	VRRP settings
------	------	---------------------	---------------

I.2.21. subnet: Subnet settings

Subnet settings define the IP address(es) of the FireBrick, and also allow default routes to be set.

Table I.28. subnet: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
accept-dns	boolean	true	Accept DNS servers specified by DHCP
arp-timeout	unsignedShort	60	Max lifetime on ARP and ND
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
broadcast	boolean	false	If broadcast address allowed
comment	string	-	Comment
gateway	List of IPAddr	-	One or more gateways to install
ip	List of IPSubnet	Automatic by DHCP	One or more IP/len
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for subnet (highest wins)
mtu	(unsignedShort 576-1600) mtu	As interface	MTU for subnet
name	string	-	Name
nat	boolean	false	Short cut to set nat default mode on all IPv4 traffic from subnet (can be overridden by firewall rules)
profile	string	-	Profile name
proxy-arp	boolean	false	Answer ARP/ND by proxy if we have routing
ra	ramode	false	If to announce IPv6 RA for this subnet
ra-dns	List of IP6Addr	-	List of recursive DNS servers in route announcements
ra-managed	dhcpv6control	-	RA 'M' (managed) flag
ra-max	(unsignedShort 4-1800) ra-max	600	Max RA send interval
ra-min	(unsignedShort 3-1350) ra-min	-	Min RA send interval
ra-mtu	unsignedShort	As subnet	MTU to use on RA
ra-other	dhcpv6control	-	RA 'O' (other) flag
ra-profile	string	-	Profile, if inactive then forces low priority RA
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
test	IPAddr	-	Test link state using ARP/ND for this IP
ttl	unsignedByte	64	TTL for originating traffic via subnet

I.2.22. vrrp: VRRP settings

VRRP settings provide virtual router redundancy for the FireBrick. Profile inactive does not disable vrrp but forces vrrp low priority. Use different VRID on different VLANs.

Table I.29. vrrp: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
answer-ping	boolean	true	Whether to answer PING to VRRP IPs when master
comment	string	-	Comment
delay	unsignedInt	60	Delay after routing established before priority returns to normal
interval	unsignedShort	100	Transit interval (centiseconds)
ip	List of IPAddr	Not optional	One or more IP addresses to announce
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-error	string	log as event	Log errors
low-priority	unsignedByte	1	Lower priority applicable until routing established
name	string	-	Name
preempt	boolean	true	Whether pre-empt allowed
priority	unsignedByte	100	Normal priority
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
test	List of IPAddr	-	List of IPs to which routing must exist else low priority (deprecated)
use-vmac	boolean	true	Whether to use the special VMAC or use normal MAC
version3	boolean	v2 for IPv4, v3 for IPv6	Use only version 3
vrid	unsignedByte	42	VRID

I.2.23. dhcpd: DHCP server settings

Settings for DHCP server

Table I.30. dhcpd: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
boot	IP4Addr	-	Next/boot server
boot-file	string	-	Boot filename
class	string	-	Class match
client-name	string	-	Client name match
comment	string	-	Comment
dns	List of IP4Addr	Our IP	DNS resolvers
domain	string	From system settings	DNS domain
force	boolean	-	Send all options even if not requested
gateway	List of IP4Addr	Our IP	Gateway
ip	List of IP4Range	0.0.0.0/0	Address pool
lease	duration	2:00:00	Lease length

log	string	Not logging	Log events (allocations)
mac	List up to 12 (hexBinary) macprefix	-	Partial or full MAC addresses
name	string	-	Name
ntp	List of IP4Addr	From system settings	NTP server
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
syslog	List of IP4Addr	-	Syslog server
time	List of IP4Addr	Our IP	Time server

Table I.31. dhcpd: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
send	dhcp-attr-hex	Optional, unlimited	Additional attributes to send (hex)
send-ip	dhcp-attr-ip	Optional, unlimited	Additional attributes to send (IP)
send-number	dhcp-attr-number	Optional, unlimited	Additional attributes to send (numeric)
send-string	dhcp-attr-string	Optional, unlimited	Additional attributes to send (string)

I.2.24. dhcp-attr-hex: DHCP server attributes (hex)

Additional DHCP server attributes (hex)

Table I.32. dhcp-attr-hex: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
force	boolean	-	Send even if not requested
id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Attribute type code
name	string	-	Name
value	hexBinary	<i>Not optional</i>	Value

I.2.25. dhcp-attr-string: DHCP server attributes (string)

Additional DHCP server attributes (string)

Table I.33. dhcp-attr-string: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
force	boolean	-	Send even if not requested
id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Attribute type code
name	string	-	Name
value	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Value

I.2.26. dhcp-attr-number: DHCP server attributes (numeric)

Additional DHCP server attributes (numeric)

Table I.34. dhcp-attr-number: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
force	boolean	-	Send even if not requested
id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Attribute type code
name	string	-	Name
value	unsignedInt	<i>Not optional</i>	Value

I.2.27. dhcp-attr-ip: DHCP server attributes (IP)

Additional DHCP server attributes (IP)

Table I.35. dhcp-attr-ip: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
force	boolean	-	Send even if not requested
id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Attribute type code
name	string	-	Name
value	IP4Addr	<i>Not optional</i>	Value

I.2.28. pppoe: PPPoE settings

PPPoE endpoint settings

Table I.36. pppoe: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
ac-name	string	Any a/c name	Access concentrator name
accept-dns	boolean	true	Accept DNS servers specified by far end
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
cug	<i>(unsignedShort 1-32767)</i> cug	-	Closed user group ID
cug-restrict	boolean	-	Closed user group restricted traffic (only to/from same CUG ID)
graph	<i>(string)</i> graphname	-	Graph name
ip-over-lcp	boolean	auto	Sends all IP packets as LCP
lcp-rate	unsignedByte	10	LCP interval (seconds)
lcp-timeout	unsignedByte	61	LCP timeout (seconds)
local	IP4Addr	-	Local IPv4 address
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for route (highest wins)

log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Not logging	Log as events
mode	pppoe-mode	client	PPPoE server/client mode
mtu	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 576-1600) mtu	1492	MTU for link
name	string	-	Name
nat	boolean	false	NAT traffic to this link unless otherwise set
password	Secret	-	User password
pd-interface	List of string	Auto	Interfaces for IPv6 prefix delegation
port	string	-	Physical port number, or port group name
profile	string	-	Profile name
remote	IP4Addr	-	Remote IPv4 address
routes	List of IPPrefix	Default gateway	Routes when link up
service	string	Any service	Service name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	-	Default egress rate limit (b/s)
table	(<i>unsignedByte</i> 0-99) routetable	-	Routing table number for payload
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	true	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS
username	string	-	User name
vlan	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 0-4095) vlan	0	VLAN ID (0=untagged)

Table I.37. pppoe: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
route	ppp-route	Optional, unlimited	Routes to apply when ppp link is up

I.2.29. ppp-route: PPP routes

Routes that apply when link is up

Table I.38. ppp-route: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	List of IPPrefix	Not optional	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

I.2.30. usb: USB 3G/dongle settings

USB config settings including 3G data

Table I.39. usb: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
log	string	Web/console	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logged	Log errors
log-error	string	Web/Flash/console	Log errors
profile	string	-	Profile name

Table I.40. usb: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
dongle	dongle	Optional, up to 10	USB 3G/dongle settings

I.2.31. dongle: 3G/dongle settings

3G/dongle config settings

Table I.41. dongle: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
accept-dns	boolean	true	Accept DNS servers specified by far end
apn	string	From SIM	Mobile access point name
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
context	pdp-context-type	ip	Type of connection to make
cug	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 1-32767) cug	-	Closed user group ID
cug-restrict	boolean	-	Closed user group restricted traffic (only to/from same CUG ID)
dial-string	string	ATV1 ATE0 AT +CFUN=1 AT&D2&C1S0=0S7=60 AT +CGDCONT=1,"[context]","[apn]" ATDT*99#	Space separated AT command strings which can include [apn] and [context]
graph	(<i>string</i>) graphname	-	Graph name
local	IP4Addr	-	Local IPv4 address
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for route (highest wins)
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
mtu	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 576-1600) mtu	1500	MTU for link

name	string	-	Name
nat	boolean	true	NAT traffic to this link unless otherwise set
password	Secret	-	User password
product	hexBinary	-	Product ID - used to match a configuration with specific device vendor
profile	string	-	Profile name
remote	IP4Addr	-	Remote IPv4 address
routes	List of IPPrefix	Default gateway	Routes when link up
socket	string	-	What USB socket ID should this config apply to
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	-	Default egress rate limit (b/s)
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	From interface	Routing table number for payload
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	true	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS
username	string	-	User name
vendor	hexBinary	-	Vendor ID - used to match a configuration with specific device vendor

Table I.42. dongle: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
route	ppp-route	Optional, unlimited	Routes to apply when link is up

I.2.32. route: Static routes

Static routes define prefixes which are permanently in the routing table, and whether these should be announced by routing protocols or not.

Table I.43. route: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
gateway	List of IPAddr	Not optional	One or more target gateway IPs
graph	(string) graphname	-	Graph name
ip	List of IPPrefix	Not optional	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	-	Egress rate limit (b/s)
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.33. network: Locally originated networks

Network blocks that are announced but not actually added to internal routes - note that blackhole and nowhere objects can also announce but add routing.

Table I.44. network: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
as-path	<i>List up to 10</i> unsignedInt	-	Custom AS path as if network received
bgp	bgpmode	true	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	<i>List of</i> IPPrefix	<i>Not optional</i>	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.34. blackhole: Dead end networks

Networks that go nowhere

Table I.45. blackhole: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	false	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	<i>List of</i> IPPrefix	<i>Not optional</i>	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.35. loopback: Locally originated networks

Loopback addresses define local IP addresses

Table I.46. loopback: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	<i>List of</i> IPAddr	<i>Not optional</i>	One or more local network addresses

localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number

I.2.36. bgp: Overall BGP settings

The BGP element defines general BGP settings and a list of peer definitions for the individual BGP peers.

Table I.47. bgp: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
as	unsignedInt	-	Our AS
cluster-id	IP4Addr	-	Our cluster ID
comment	string	-	Comment
id	IP4Addr	-	Our router ID
log	string	Not logging	Log events
name	string	-	Name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number

Table I.48. bgp: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
peer	bgppeer	Optional, up to 50	List of peers/neighbours

I.2.37. bgppeer: BGP peer definitions

The peer definition specifies the attributes of an individual peer. Multiple IP addresses can be specified, typically for IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for the same peer, but this can be used for a group of similar peers.

Table I.49. bgppeer: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
add-own-as	boolean	-	Add our AS on exported routes
allow-export	boolean	-	Ignore no-export community and export anyway
allow-only-their-as	boolean	-	Only accept routes that are solely the peers AS
allow-own-as	boolean	-	Allow our AS inbound
as	unsignedInt	-	Peer AS
capability-as4	boolean	true	If supporting AS4
capability-graceful-restart	boolean	true	If supporting Graceful Restart

Configuration Objects

capability-mpe-ipv4	boolean	true	If supporting MPE for IPv4
capability-mpe-ipv6	boolean	true	If supporting MPE for IPv6
capability-route-refresh	boolean	true	If supporting Route Refresh
comment	string	-	Comment
drop-default	boolean	false	Ignore default route received
export-med	unsignedInt	-	Set MED on exported routes (unless export filter sets it)
holdtime	unsignedInt	30	Hold time
ignore-bad-optional-partial	boolean	true	Ignore routes with a recognised badly formed optional that is flagged partial
import-localpref	unsignedInt	-	Set localpref on imported routes (unless import filter sets it)
in-soft	boolean	-	Mark received routes as soft
ip	List of IPAddr	-	One or more IPs of neighbours (omit to allow incoming)
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
max-prefix	(unsignedInt 1-10000) bgp-prefix-limit	10000	Limit prefixes (IPv4+IPv6)
md5	Secret	-	MD5 signing secret
name	string	-	Name
next-hop-self	boolean	false	Force us as next hop outbound
no-fib	boolean	-	Don't include received routes in packet forwarding
pad	unsignedByte	-	Pad (prefix stuff) our AS by this many
profile	string	-	Profile name
same-ip-type	boolean	true	Only accept/send IPv4 routes to IPv4 peers and IPv6 routes to IPv6 peers
send-default	boolean	false	Send a default route to this peer
send-no-routes	boolean	false	Don't send any normal routes
shutdown	boolean	-	Shutdown this neighbour (deprecated, use profile)
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
timer-idle	unsignedInt	60	Idle time after error
timer-openwait	unsignedInt	10	Time to wait for OPEN on connection
timer-retry	unsignedInt	10	Time to retry the neighbour
ttl-security	byte	-	Enable RFC5082 TTL security (if +ve, 1 to 127), i.e. 1 for adjacent router. If -ve (-1 to -128) set forced sending TTL, i.e. -1 for TTL of 1 sending, and not checking.
type	peertype	normal	Type of neighbour (affects some defaults)
use-vrrp-as-self	boolean	true	Use VRRP address as self if possible

Table I.50. bgppeer: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
export	bgpmap	Optional	Mapping and filtering rules of announcing prefixes to peer
import	bgpmap	Optional	Mapping and filtering rules of accepting prefixes from peer

I.2.38. bgpmap: Mapping and filtering rules of BGP prefixes

This defines the rules for mapping and filtering of prefixes to/from a BGP peer.

Table I.51. bgpmap: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
detag	List of Community	-	List of community tags to remove
drop	boolean	-	Do not import/export this prefix
localpref	unsignedInt	-	Set localpref (highest wins)
med	unsignedInt	-	Set MED
prefix	List of IPFilter	-	Drop all that are not in this prefix list
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
tag	List of Community	-	List of community tags to add

Table I.52. bgpmap: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
match	bgprule	Optional, unlimited	List rules, in order of checking

I.2.39. bgprule: Individual mapping/filtering rule

An individual rule for BGP mapping/filtering

Table I.53. bgprule: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
community	Community	-	Community that must be present to match
detag	List of Community	-	List of community tags to remove
drop	boolean	-	Do not import/export this prefix
localpref	unsignedInt	-	Set localpref (highest wins)
med	unsignedInt	-	Set MED
name	string	-	Name
prefix	List of IPFilter	-	Prefixes that this rule applies to
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

tag	List of Community	-	List of community tags to add
-----	-------------------	---	-------------------------------

I.2.40. cqm: Constant Quality Monitoring settings

Constant quality monitoring (graphs and data) have a number of settings. Most of the graphing settings can be overridden when a graph is collected so these define the defaults in many cases.

Table I.54. cqm: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
ave	Colour	#08f	Colour for average latency
axis	Colour	black	Axis colour
background	Colour	white	Background colour
bottom	unsignedByte	11	Pixels space at bottom of graph
dateformat	string	%Y-%m-%d	Date format
dayformat	string	%a	Day format
fail	Colour	red	Colour for failed (dropped) seconds
fail-level	unsignedInt	1	Fail level not expected on low usage
fail-level1	unsignedByte	3	Loss level 1
fail-level2	unsignedByte	50	Loss level 2
fail-score	unsignedByte	200	Score for fail and low usage
fail-score1	unsignedByte	100	Score for on/above level 1
fail-score2	unsignedByte	200	Score for on/above level 2
fail-usage	unsignedInt	128000	Usage below which fail is not expected
fblogo	Colour	#bd1220	Colour for logo
graticule	Colour	grey	Graticule colour
heading	string	-	Heading of graph
hourformat	string	%H	Hour format
key	unsignedByte	90	Pixels space for key
label-ave	string	Av	Label for average latency
label-damp	string	Damp%	Label for % shaper damping
label-fail	string	%Fail	Label for seconds (%) failed
label-latency	string	Latency	Label for latency
label-max	string	Max	Label for maximum latency
label-min	string	Min	Label for minimum latency
label-off	string	Off	Label for off line seconds
label-period	string	Period	Label for period
label-poll	string	Polls	Label for polls
label-rej	string	%Reject	Label for rejected seconds
label-rx	string	Rx	Label for Rx traffic level
label-score	string	Score	Label for score
label-sent	string	Sent	Label for seconds polled
label-shaper	string	Shaper	Label for shaper

label-time	string	Time	Label for time
label-traffic	string	Traffic (bit/s)	Label for traffic level
label-tx	string	Tx	Label for Tx traffic level
latency-level	unsignedInt	100000000	Latency level not expected on low usage
latency-level1	unsignedInt	100000000	Latency level 1 (ns)
latency-level2	unsignedInt	500000000	Latency level 2 (ns)
latency-score	unsignedByte	200	Score for high latency and low usage
latency-score1	unsignedByte	10	Score for on/above level 1
latency-score2	unsignedByte	20	Score for on/above level 2
latency-usage	unsignedInt	128000	Usage below which latency is not expected
left	unsignedByte	0	Pixels space left of main graph
log	string	Not logging	Log events
max	Colour	green	Colour for maximum latency
min	Colour	#008	Colour for minimum latency
ms-max	positiveInteger	500	ms max height
off	Colour	#c8f	Colour for off line seconds
outside	Colour	transparent	Colour for outer border
ping-update	duration	1:00:00	Interval for periodic updates
ping-url	string	-	URL for ping list
rej	Colour	#f8c	Colour for off line seconds
right	unsignedByte	50	Pixels space right of main graph
rx	Colour	#800	Colour for Rx traffic level
secret	Secret	-	Secret for MD5 coded URLs
sent	Colour	#ff8	Colour for polled seconds
share-interface	string	-	Interface on which to broadcast data for shaper sharing
share-secret	string	-	Secret to validate shaper sharing
subheading	string	-	Subheading of graph
text	Colour	black	Colour for text
text1	string	-	Text line 1
text2	string	-	Text line 2
text3	string	-	Text line 3
text4	string	-	Text line 4
timeformat	string	%Y-%m-%d %H: %M:%S	Time format
top	unsignedByte	4	Pixels space at top of graph
tx	Colour	#080	Colour for Tx traffic level

I.2.41. I2tp: L2TP settings

L2TP settings for incoming and outgoing L2TP connections

Table I.55. l2tp: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
accounting-interval	duration	1:00:00	Periodic interim accounting interval

Table I.56. l2tp: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
incoming	l2tp-incoming	Optional, unlimited	Incoming L2TP connections
outgoing	l2tp-outgoing	Optional, unlimited	Outgoing L2TP connections

I.2.42. l2tp-outgoing: L2TP settings for outgoing L2TP connections

L2TP tunnel settings for outgoing L2TP connections

Table I.57. l2tp-outgoing: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
called	string	-	called-station-idi to send
calling	string	-	calling-station-id to send
comment	string	-	Comment
cug	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 1-32767) cug	-	Closed user group ID
cug-restrict	boolean	-	Closed user group restricted traffic (only to/from same CUG ID)
fail-lockout	unsignedByte	1	Interval kept in failed state
graph	string	-	Graph name
hdlc	boolean	true	Send HDLC header (FF03) on all PPP frames
hello-interval	unsignedByte	10	Interval between HELLO messages
hostname	string	-	Hostname quoted on incoming tunnel
ip	IPAddr	<i>Not optional</i>	IP of far end
lcp-rate	unsignedByte	10	LCP interval (seconds)
lcp-timeout	unsignedByte	61	LCP timeout (seconds)
local	IP4Addr	-	Local IPv4 address
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for remote-ip/routes (highest wins)
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
min-retry	duration	PT10S	Minimum session time before retrying connection
mtu	(<i>unsignedShort</i> 576-1600) mtu	-	Default MTU for sessions in this tunnel
name	string	-	Name

open-timeout	unsignedByte	10	Interval before OPEN considered failed
password	Secret	-	Password for login
payload-table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number for payload traffic
profile	string	-	Profile name
remote	IP4Addr	-	Remote IPv4 address
retry-timeout	unsignedByte	10	Interval to retry sending control messages before fail
routes	List of IPPrefix	Default gateway	Routes when link up
rx-speed	unsignedInt	-	Send ingress rate (b/s)
secret	Secret	-	Shared secret
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number for L2TP session
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	false	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS
tx-speed	unsignedInt	-	Egress rate limit (b/s)
username	string	-	User name for login

Table I.58. l2tp-outgoing: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
route	ppp-route	Optional, unlimited	Routes to apply when link is up

I.2.43. l2tp-incoming: L2TP settings for incoming L2TP connections

L2TP tunnel settings for incoming L2TP connections

Table I.59. l2tp-incoming: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	-	List of IP ranges from which connects can be made
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
damping	boolean	false	Apply damping to sessions if limiting on shaper
dhcpv6dns	List of IP6Addr	-	List of IPv6 DNS servers
dos-limit	unsignedInt	10000	Per second per session tx packet drop limit for DOS protection
fail-lockout	unsignedByte	60	Interval kept in failed state
graph	string	-	Graph name
hdlc	boolean	true	Send HDLC header (FF03) on all PPP frames
hello-interval	unsignedByte	60	Interval between HELLO messages

hostname	string	-	Hostname quoted on incoming tunnel
icmp-ppp	boolean	false	Use PPP endpoint for ICMP
ipv6ep	IP4Addr	-	Local end IPv4 for IPv6 tunnels
lcp-mru-fix	boolean	false	Restart LCP if RAS negotiated MRU is too high
lcp-rate	unsignedByte	1	LCP interval (seconds)
lcp-timeout	unsignedByte	10	LCP timeout (seconds)
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
mtu	<i>(unsignedShort 576-1600)</i> mtu	-	Default MTU for sessions in this tunnel
name	string	-	Name
open-timeout	unsignedByte	60	Interval before OPEN considered failed
payload-table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number for payload traffic
pppdns1	IP4Addr	-	PPP DNS1 IPv4 default
pppdns2	IP4Addr	-	PPP DNS2 IPv4 default
pppip	IP4Addr	-	Local end PPP IPv4
profile	string	-	Profile name
radius	string	-	Name for RADIUS server config to use
relay-nas-ip	boolean	true	Pass remote L2TP endpoint as NAS IP
require-platform	boolean	false	All sessions require a platform RADIUS first
require-radius-acct	boolean	-	Close session if cannot do RADIUS accounting
retry-timeout	unsignedByte	60	Interval to retry sending control messages before fail
secret	Secret	-	Shared secret
shutdown	boolean	false	Refuse all new sessions or tunnels
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	-	Default egress rate limit (b/s)
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number for L2TP session
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	false	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS
test	<i>List of</i> IPAddr	-	List of IPs to which routing must exist else tunnel dropped (deprecated)

Table I.60. l2tp-incoming: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
match	l2tp-relay	Optional, unlimited	Rules for relaying connections and local authentication

I.2.44. l2tp-relay: Relay and local authentication rules for L2TP

Rules for relaying L2TP or local authentication

Table I.61. l2tp-relay: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
called-station-id	List of string	-	One or more patterns to match called-station-id
calling-station-id	List of string	-	One or more patterns to match calling-station-id
comment	string	-	Comment
graph	(string) graphname	-	Graph name
ip-over-lcp	boolean	-	Send IP over LCP (local auth)
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for remote-ip/routes (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
password	Secret	-	Password check
profile	string	-	Profile name
relay-hostname	string	-	Hostname for L2TP connection
relay-ip	List of IPAddr	-	Target IP(s) for L2TP connection
relay-pick	boolean	-	If set, try one of the relay IPs at random first
relay-secret	Secret	-	Shared secret for L2TP connection
remote-ip	IP4Addr	-	Remote end PPP IPv4 (local auth)
remote-netmask	IP4Addr	-	Remote end PPP Netmask (local auth)
routes	List of IPPrefix	-	Additional routes when link up (local auth)
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
test	List of IPAddr	-	List of IPs that must have routing for this target to be valid (deprecated)
username	List of string	-	One or more patterns to match username

I.2.45. fb105: FB105 tunnel definition

FB105 tunnel definition

Table I.62. fb105: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
fast-udp	boolean	true	Send UDP packets marked not to be reordered
graph	(string) graphname	-	Graph name

internal-ip	IP4Addr	local-ip	Internal IP for traffic originated and sent down tunnel
ip	IP4Addr	dynamic tunnel	Far end IP
keep-alive	boolean	true if ip set	Constantly send keep alive packets
local-id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Unique local end tunnel ID
local-ip	IP4Addr	-	Force specific local end IP
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for route (highest wins)
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
mtu	unsignedShort	1500	MTU for wrapped packets
name	string	-	Name
ospf-cost	unsignedShort	1000	Link cost, forces default OSPF on link if set even if OSPF not otherwise configured
payload-table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number for payload traffic
port	unsignedShort	1	UDP port to use
profile	string	-	Profile name
remote-id	unsignedByte	<i>Not optional</i>	Unique remote end tunnel ID
reorder	boolean	false	Reorder incoming tunnel packets
reorder-maxq	<i>(unsignedInt 1-100)</i> fb105-reorder-maxq	32	Max queue length for out of order packets
reorder-timeout	<i>(unsignedInt 10-5000)</i> fb105-reorder-timeout	100	Max time to delay out of order packet (ms)
routes	<i>List of</i> IPPrefix	-	Routes when link up
secret	Secret	Unsigned	Shared secret for tunnel
set	unsignedByte	-	Set ID for reorder ID tagging (create a set of tunnels together)
sign-all	boolean	false	All packets must be signed, not just keepalives
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	no shaping	Egress rate limit used (b/s)
table	<i>(unsignedByte 0-99)</i> routetable	0	Routing table number for tunnel wrappers
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	true	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS

Table I.63. fb105: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
route	fb105-route	Optional, unlimited	Routes to apply to tunnel when up

I.2.46. fb105-route: FB105 routes

Routes for prefixes that are sent to the FB105 tunnel when up

Table I.64. fb105-route: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	List of IPPrefix	Not optional	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

I.2.47. ipsec: IPsec onfiguration

IPsec configuration

Table I.65. ipsec: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
auth-algorithm	ipsec-auth-algorithm	null	Manual setting for authentication algorithm
auth-key	hexBinary	-	Manual key for authentication
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
crypt-algorithm	ipsec-crypt-algorithm	null	Manual setting for encryption algorithm
crypt-key	hexBinary	-	Manual key for encryption
graph	(string) graphname	-	Graph name
internal-ipv4	IP4Addr	local-ip	Internal IPv4 for traffic originated on the FireBrick and sent down tunnel
internal-ipv6	IP6Addr	local-ip	Internal IPv6 for traffic originated on the FireBrick and sent down tunnel
local-ip	IPAddr	-	Local end IP for tunnel
local-spi	(unsignedInt 256-4294967295) ipsec-spi	Not optional	Local Security Parameters Index
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref for route (highest wins)
log	string	Not logging	Log events
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
mode	ipsec-mode	tunnel	Encapsulation mode
mtu	unsignedShort	1500	MTU for wrapped packets
name	string	-	Name
ospf-cost	unsignedShort	1000	Link cost, forces default OSPF on link if set even if OSPF not otherwise configured

outer-spi	(<i>unsignedInt</i> 256-4294967295) ipsec-spi	-	Security Parameters Index for outer header
payload-table	(<i>unsignedByte</i> 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number for payload traffic
profile	string	-	Profile name
remote-ip	IPAddr	-	Far end IP for tunnel
remote-spi	(<i>unsignedInt</i> 256-4294967295) ipsec-spi	<i>Not optional</i>	Remote Security Parameters Index
routes	<i>List of</i> IPPrefix	-	Routes when link up
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
speed	unsignedInt	no shaping	Egress rate limit used (b/s)
table	(<i>unsignedByte</i> 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number for tunnel wrappers
tcp-mss-fix	boolean	true	Adjust MSS option in TCP SYN to fix session MSS
type	ipsec-type	ESP	Encapsulation type

Table I.66. ipsec: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
route	ipsec-route	Optional, unlimited	Routes to apply to tunnel when up

I.2.48. ipsec-route: IPsec tunnel routes

Routes for prefixes that are sent to the IPsec tunnel when up

Table I.67. ipsec-route: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
bgp	bgpmode	-	BGP announce mode for routes
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	<i>List of</i> IPPrefix	<i>Not optional</i>	One or more network prefixes
localpref	unsignedInt	4294967295	Localpref of network (highest wins)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management

I.2.49. ping: Ping/graph definition

Base ping config - additional ping targets set via web API or other means

Table I.68. ping: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
-----------	------	---------	-------------

comment	string	-	Comment
graph	(string) graphname	<i>Not optional</i>	Graph name
ip	IPNameAddr	<i>Not optional</i>	Far end IP
name	string	-	Name
size	(unsignedInt 0-1472) ping-size	0	Payload size
slow	boolean	Auto	Slow polling
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Routing table number for sending pings

I.2.50. profile: Control profile

General on/off control profile used in various places in the config.

Table I.69. profile: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
and	List of string	-	Active if all specified profiles are active as well as all other tests passing, including 'not'
comment	string	-	Comment
dongle	List of string	-	Dongle state (any of these are up)
fb105	List of string	-	FB105 tunnel state (any of these active)
initial	boolean	true	Defines state at system startup if not using set
interval	duration	1	Time between tests (e.g. seconds)
invert	boolean	-	Invert final result of testing
log	string	Not logging	Log target
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log additional information
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Profile name
not	string	-	Active if specified profile is inactive as well as all other tests passing, including 'and'
or	List of string	-	Active if any of these other profiles active regardless of other tests (including 'not' or 'and')
ppp	List of string	-	PPP link state (any of these are up)
recover	duration	1	Time before recover (i.e. how long test has been passing)
route	List of IPAddr	-	Test passes if all specified addresses are routeable
set	boolean	-	Manual override, ignore ALL other settings
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	-	Routing table for ping/route

timeout	duration	10	Time before timeout (i.e. how long test has been failing)
vrrp	List of string	-	VRRP state (any of these is master)

Table I.70. profile: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
date	profile-date	Optional, unlimited	Test passes if within any date range specified
ping	profile-ping	Optional	Test passes if address is answering pings
time	profile-time	Optional, unlimited	Test passes if within any time range specified

I.2.51. profile-date: Test passes if within any of the time ranges specified

Time range test in profiles

Table I.71. profile-date: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
start	dateTime	-	Start (YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS)
stop	dateTime	-	End (YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS)

I.2.52. profile-time: Test passes if within any of the date/time ranges specified

Time range test in profiles

Table I.72. profile-time: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
days	Set of day	-	Which days of week apply, default all
start	time	-	Start (HH:MM:SS)
stop	time	-	End (HH:MM:SS)

I.2.53. profile-ping: Test passes if any addresses are pingable

Ping targets

Table I.73. profile-ping: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
flow	unsignedShort	-	Flow label (IPv6)
gateway	IPAddr	-	Ping via specific gateway (bypasses session tracking if set)

ip	IPAddr	<i>Not optional</i>	Target IP
source-ip	IPAddr	-	Source IP
ttl	unsignedByte	-	Time to live / Hop limit

I.2.54. shaper: Traffic shaper

Settings for a named traffic shaper

Table I.74. shaper: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
name	<i>(string)</i> graphname	<i>Not optional</i>	Graph name
rx	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit/target (b/s)
rx-max	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit max
rx-min	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit min
rx-min-burst	duration	-	Rx minimum allowed burst time
rx-step	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate reduction per per hour
share	boolean	-	If shaper is shared with other devices
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
tx	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit/target (b/s)
tx-max	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit max
tx-min	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit min
tx-min-burst	duration	-	Tx minimum allowed burst time
tx-step	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate reduction per hour

Table I.75. shaper: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
override	shaper-override	Optional, unlimited	Profile specific variations on main settings

I.2.55. shaper-override: Traffic shaper override based on profile

Settings for a named traffic shaper

Table I.76. shaper-override: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
profile	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Profile name
rx	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit/target (b/s)
rx-max	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit max
rx-min	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate limit min
rx-min-burst	duration	-	Rx minimum allowed burst time
rx-step	unsignedInt	-	Rx rate reduction per per hour

source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
tx	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit/target (b/s)
tx-max	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit max
tx-min	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate limit min
tx-min-burst	duration	-	Tx minimum allowed burst time
tx-step	unsignedInt	-	Tx rate reduction per hour

I.2.56. ip-group: IP Group

Named IP group

Table I.77. ip-group: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
ip	List of IPRange	-	One or more IP ranges or IP/len
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
users	List of string	-	Include IP of (time limited) logged in web users

I.2.57. route-override: Routing override rules

Routing override rules

Table I.78. route-override: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Applicable routing table

Table I.79. route-override: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
rule	session-route-rule	Optional, unlimited	Individual rules, first match applies

I.2.58. session-route-rule: Routing override rule

Routing override rule

Table I.80. session-route-rule: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
-----------	------	---------	-------------

comment	string	-	Comment
cug	List of PortRange	-	Closed user group ID(s)
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
protocol	List of unsignedByte	-	Protocol(s) [1=ICMP, 6=TCP, 17=UDP]
set-gateway	IPAddr	-	New gateway
set-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging (if not set by rule-set)
set-nat	boolean	-	Changed source IP and port to local for NAT
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-interface	List of string	-	Source interface(s)
source-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Source IP address range(s)
source-port	List of PortRange	-	Source port(s)
target-interface	List of string	-	Target interface(s)
target-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Target IP address range(s)
target-port	List of PortRange	-	Target port(s)

Table I.81. session-route-rule: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
share	session-route-share	Optional, unlimited	Load shared actions

I.2.59. session-route-share: Route override load sharing

Route override setting for load sharing

Table I.82. session-route-share: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
profile	string	-	Profile name
set-gateway	IPAddr	-	New gateway
set-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging (if not set by rule-set)
set-nat	boolean	-	Changed source IP and port to local for NAT
weight	positiveInteger	1	Weighting of load share

I.2.60. rule-set: Firewall/mapping rule set

Firewalling rule set with entry criteria and default actions

Table I.83. rule-set: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment
cug	List of PortRange	-	Closed user group ID(s)
interface	List of string	-	Source or target interface(s)
ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Source or target IP address range(s)
log	string	Not logging	Log session start
log-end	string	Not logging	Log session end
log-no-match	string	log-start	Log if no match
name	string	-	Name
no-match-action	firewall-action	Not optional	Default if no rule matches
profile	string	-	Profile name
protocol	List of unsignedByte	-	Protocol(s) [1=ICMP, 6=TCP, 17=UDP]
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-interface	List of string	-	Source interface(s)
source-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Source IP address range(s)
source-port	List of PortRange	-	Source port(s)
table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	0	Applicable routing table
target-interface	List of string	-	Target interface(s)
target-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Target IP address range(s)
target-port	List of PortRange	-	Target port(s)

Table I.84. rule-set: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
ip-group	ip-group	Optional, unlimited	Named IP groups
rule	session-rule	Optional, unlimited	Individual rules, first match applies

I.2.61. session-rule: Firewall rules

Firewall rule

The individual firewall rules are checked in order within the rule-set, and the first match applied. The default action for a rule is continue, so once matched the next rule-set is considered.

Table I.85. session-rule: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
action	firewall-action	continue	Action taken on match
comment	string	-	Comment
cug	List of PortRange	-	Closed user group ID(s)

interface	List of string	-	Source or target interface(s)
ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Source or target IP address range(s)
log	string	As rule-set	Log session start
log-end	string	As rule-set	Log session end
name	string	-	Name
profile	string	-	Profile name
protocol	List of unsignedByte	-	Protocol(s) [1=ICMP, 6=TCP, 17=UDP]
set-gateway	IPAddr	-	New gateway
set-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging
set-initial-timeout	duration	-	Initial time-out
set-nat	boolean	-	Changed source IP and port to local for NAT
set-ongoing-timeout	duration	-	Ongoing time-out
set-reverse-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging (far side of session)
set-source-ip	IPAddr	-	New source IP
set-source-port	unsignedShort	-	New source port
set-table	(unsignedByte 0-99) routetable	-	Set new routing table
set-target-ip	IPAddr	-	New target IP
set-target-port	unsignedShort	-	New target port
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-interface	List of string	-	Source interface(s)
source-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Source IP address range(s)
source-port	List of PortRange	-	Source port(s)
target-interface	List of string	-	Target interface(s)
target-ip	List of IPNameRange	-	Target IP address range(s)
target-port	List of PortRange	-	Target port(s)

Table I.86. session-rule: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
share	session-share	Optional, unlimited	Load shared actions

I.2.62. session-share: Firewall load sharing

Firewall actions for load sharing

Table I.87. session-share: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
comment	string	-	Comment

profile	string	-	Profile name
set-gateway	IPAddr	-	New gateway
set-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging
set-nat	boolean	-	Changed source IP and port to local for NAT
set-reverse-graph	string	-	Graph name for shaping/logging (far side of session)
set-source-ip	IPAddr	-	New source IP
set-source-port	unsignedShort	-	New source port
set-table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	-	Set new routing table
set-target-ip	IPAddr	-	New target IP
set-target-port	unsignedShort	-	New target port
weight	positiveInteger	1	Weighting of load share

I.2.63. voip: Voice over IP config

Voice over IP config

Table I.88. voip: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
area-code	string	-	Local area code (without national prefix)
comment	string	-	Comment
country	string	44	Local country code
emergency	<i>List of string</i>	112 999	Emergency numbers
international	string	00	International dialling prefix
local-digits	string	23456789	Local numbers start with these digits
local-min-len	unsignedByte	5	Local numbers min length
log	string	Not logging	Log calls
log-blf-debug	string	Not logging	Log subscribe/notify SIP messages
log-cdr	string	Not logged	Log CDR records
log-debug	string	Not logging	Log debug and SIP messages
log-error	string	Log as event	Log errors
log-register	string	Not logging	Log registrations
log-register-debug	string	Not logging	Log registration SIP messages
national	string	0	National dialling prefix
pabx	boolean	true	Operate as office PABX
pickup	string	*	Call pickup/steal prefix
radius-call	string	-	Name for RADIUS server config to use call routing
radius-cdr	string	-	Name for RADIUS server config to use for CDRs
radius-challenge	boolean	-	Send RADIUS auth to get challenge response

radius-register	string	-	Name for RADIUS server config to use for registrations
realm	string	FireBrick	Default realm
record-mandatory	boolean	-	Drop call if recording fails
record-server	string	-	Call recording server hostname or address
release	string	1470	CLI release prefix
security-replies	boolean	true	Don't challenge or error reply to unrecognised non local IP request
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
withhold	string	141	CLI withhold prefix

Table I.89. voip: Elements

Element	Type	Instances	Description
carrier	carrier	Optional, up to 200	VoIP carriers
group	ringgroup	Optional, up to 20	Ring groups
telephone	telephone	Optional, up to 200	VoIP users
tone	tone	Optional, up to 25	Defined tones

I.2.64. carrier: VoIP carrier details

VoIP carrier details

Table I.90. carrier: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	of Allow anywhere from	List of IP ranges from which invite accepted
cli-format	voip-format	national	CLI number format for outgoing calls
comment	string	-	Comment
cui	string	-	Chargeable user identity for call accounting of incoming calls
display-name	string	-	Text name to use
expires	duration	1:00:00	Registration expiry time
extn	string	-	Local number assumed dialled for incoming calls
force-dtmf	boolean	-	Always send DTMF in-band
from	string	-	From SIP address for outbound registration and invites
incoming-format	voip-format	national	Dialled number format for incoming calls
max-calls	unsignedInt	-	Maximum simultaneous calls allowed
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Carrier name
outgoing-format	voip-format	national	Dialled number format for outgoing calls
password	Secret	-	Carrier password for outbound registration or inbound authenticated calls
profile	string	-	Profile name

proxy	string	-	Carrier proxy hostname or address for registration and calls
registrar	string	-	Carrier hostname for registration
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
source-ip	IPAddr	-	Source IP to use
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table number
to	string	-	To SIP request address for inbound invites, may be @domain for any at a domain
trust-cli	boolean	true	Trust inbound calling line identity
username	string	-	Carrier username for outbound registration or inbound authenticated calls
withhold	string	-	Mark withheld outbound calls using this dial prefix and send CLI in remote party id

I.2.65. telephone: VoIP telephone authentication user details

VoIP telephone details

Table I.91. telephone: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow	List of IPNameRange	Allow from anywhere	List of IP ranges from which registration accepted
allow-pickup	List of string	Allow all if PABX mode	Only allow pickup from these extensions
allow-subscribe	List of string	-	Only allow subscribe (Busy Lamp Field) from these extensions
area-code	string	-	Local area code (without national prefix) for use from this phone
carrier	string	-	Carrier to use for outbound calls
comment	string	-	Comment
cui	string	-	Chargeable user identity for call accounting
ddi	string	-	Full telephone number (international format starting +)
display-name	string	-	Text name to use
email	string	-	Email address (sent to call recording server)
expires	duration	1:00:00	Registration expiry time
extn	string	-	Local extension number
local-only	boolean	true	Restrict access to registrations from Ethernet subnets only
max-calls	unsignedInt	-	Maximum simultaneous calls allowed
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	User name (local part of 'from')

password	Secret	-	Authentication password
profile	string	-	Profile name
realm	string	-	Realm
record	recordoption	-	Automatically record calls
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
table	(<i>unsignedByte 0-99</i>) routetable	0	Routing table number
uk-cli-text	uknumberformat	Auto	Send display name as UK formatted number
username	string	-	Authentication username
wrap-up	duration	-	Wrap up time before new call

I.2.66. tone: Tone definitions

Definition of tones used

Table I.92. tone: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Tone name
plan	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Plan for frequency and duration, e.g. 400ms@400Hz-3dB+450Hz-3dB

I.2.67. ringgroup: Ring groups

Ring groups

Table I.93. ringgroup: Attributes

Attribute	Type	Default	Description
allow-pickup	<i>List of string</i>	-	Only allow pickup from these extensions
allow-subscribe	<i>List of string</i>	-	Only allow subscribe (Busy Lamp Field) from these extensions
answer-time	duration	30	Answer caller if ringing this long
comment	string	-	Comment
cui	string	-	Chargeable user identity for call accounting
ddi	string	-	Full telephone number (international format starting +)
display-name	string	-	Text name to use
email	string	-	Email address (sent to call recording server)
extn	string	-	Local extension number
limit	unsignedByte	-	Number allowed to queue
name	string	<i>Not optional</i>	Group name
order	ring-group-order	strict	Order of ring
out-of-hours	<i>List of string</i>	-	Numbers to ring if out of profile

overflow	<i>List of</i> string	-	Numbers to ring when more than one call in queue
overflow-time	duration	30	Include overflow after this time at head of queue
profile	string	-	Profile name
progress-time	duration	6	Progress to next number after this time
redirect	boolean	-	Allow calls to be diverted before ringing
ring	<i>List of</i> string	-	Numbers to ring
source	string	-	Source of data, used in automated config management
type	ring-group-type	all	Type of ring when one call in queue

I.3. Data types

I.3.1. autoloadtype: Type of s/w auto load

Table I.94. autoloadtype: Type of s/w auto load

Value	Description
false	Do no auto load
factory	Load factory releases
beta	Load beta test releases
alpha	Load test releases

I.3.2. config-access: Type of access user has to config

Table I.95. config-access: Type of access user has to config

Value	Description
none	No access unless explicitly listed
view	View only access (no passwords)
read	Read only access (with passwords)
full	Full view and edit access

I.3.3. user-level: User login level

User login level - commands available are restricted according to assigned level.

Table I.96. user-level: User login level

Value	Description
NOBODY	Unknown or not logged in user
GUEST	Guest user
USER	Normal unprivileged user
ADMIN	System administrator
DEBUG	System debugger

I.3.4. syslog-severity: Syslog severity

Log severity - different loggable events log at different levels.

Table I.97. syslog-severity: Syslog severity

Value	Description
EMERG	System is unstable
ALERT	Action must be taken immediately
CRIT	Critical conditions
ERR	Error conditions
WARNING	Warning conditions
NOTICE	Normal but significant events
INFO	Informational
DEBUG	Debug level messages
NO-LOGGING	No logging

I.3.5. syslog-facility: Syslog facility

Syslog facility, usually used to control which log file the syslog is written to.

Table I.98. syslog-facility: Syslog facility

Value	Description
KERN	Kernel messages
USER	User level messages
MAIL	Mail system
DAEMON	System Daemons
AUTH	Security/auth
SYSLOG	Internal to syslogd
LPR	Printer
NEWS	News
UUCP	UUCP
CRON	Cron daemon
AUTHPRIV	private security/auth
FTP	File transfer
12	Unused
13	Unused
14	Unused
15	Unused
LOCAL0	Local 0
LOCAL1	Local 1
LOCAL2	Local 2
LOCAL3	Local 3
LOCAL4	Local 4

LOCAL5	Local 5
LOCAL6	Local 6
LOCAL7	Local 7

I.3.6. month: Month name (3 letter)

Table I.99. month: Month name (3 letter)

Value	Description
Jan	January
Feb	February
Mar	March
Apr	April
May	May
Jun	June
Jul	July
Aug	August
Sep	September
Oct	October
Nov	November
Dec	December

I.3.7. day: Day name (3 letter)

Table I.100. day: Day name (3 letter)

Value	Description
Sun	Sunday
Mon	Monday
Tue	Tuesday
Wed	Wednesday
Thu	Thursday
Fri	Friday
Sat	Saturday

I.3.8. radiuspriority: Options for controlling platform RADIUS response priority tagging

Table I.101. radiuspriority: Options for controlling platform RADIUS response priority tagging

Value	Description
equal	All the same priority
strict	In order specified
random	Random order

calling	Hashed on calling station id
called	Hashed on called station id
username	Hashed on full username
user	Hashed on username before @
realm	Hashed on username after @
prefix	Hashed on username initial letters and numbers only

I.3.9. radiustype: Type of RADIUS server

Table I.102. radiustype: Type of RADIUS server

Value	Description
authentication	Authentication server
accounting	Accounting server
control	Allowed to send control (CoA/DM)

I.3.10. port: Physical port

Table I.103. port: Physical port

Value	Description
0	Port 0 (not valid) (<i>deprecated</i>)
1	Port 1
2	Port 2
3	Port 3
4	Port 4

I.3.11. Crossover: Crossover configuration

Physical port crossover configuration.

Table I.104. Crossover: Crossover configuration

Value	Description
auto	Crossover is determined automatically
MDI	Force no crossover

I.3.12. LinkSpeed: Physical port speed

Table I.105. LinkSpeed: Physical port speed

Value	Description
10M	10Mbit/sec
100M	100Mbit/sec
1G	1Gbit/sec
auto	Speed determined by autonegotiation

I.3.13. LinkDuplex: Physical port duplex setting

Table I.106. LinkDuplex: Physical port duplex setting

Value	Description
half	Half-duplex
full	Full-duplex
auto	Duplex determined by autonegotiation

I.3.14. LinkFlow: Physical port flow control setting

Table I.107. LinkFlow: Physical port flow control setting

Value	Description
none	No flow control
symmetric	Can support two-way flow control
send-pauses	Can send pauses but does not support pause reception
any	Can receive pauses and may send pauses if required

I.3.15. LinkClock: Physical port Gigabit clock master/slave setting

Table I.108. LinkClock: Physical port Gigabit clock master/slave setting

Value	Description
prefer-master	Master status negotiated; preference for master
prefer-slave	Master status negotiated; preference for slave
force-master	Master status forced
force-slave	Slave status forced

I.3.16. LinkLED: LED settings

Table I.109. LinkLED: LED settings

Value	Description
Link/Activity	On when link up; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link1000/ Activity	On when link up at 1G; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link100/ Activity	On when link up at 100M; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link10/Activity	On when link up at 10M; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link100-1000/ Activity	On when link up at 100M or 1G; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link10-1000/ Activity	On when link up at 10M or 1G; blink when Tx or Rx activity
Link10-100/ Activity	On when link up at 10M or 100M; blink when Tx or Rx activity

Duplex/ Collision	On when full-duplex; blink when half-duplex and collisions detected
Collision	Blink when collisions detected
Tx	Blink when Tx activity
Rx	Blink when Rx activity
Off	Permanently off
On	Permanently on
Link	On when link up
Link1000	On when link up at 1G
Link100	On when link up at 100M
Link10	On when link up at 10M
Link100-1000	On when link up at 100M or 1G
Link10-1000	On when link up at 10M or 1G
Link10-100	On when link up at 10M or 100M
Duplex	On when full-duplex

I.3.17. LinkPower: PHY power saving options

Table I.110. LinkPower: PHY power saving options

Value	Description
none	No power saving
link-down	Power save only when link is down
link-up	Power save only when link is up
full	Full power saving

I.3.18. LinkFault: Link fault type to send

Table I.111. LinkFault: Link fault type to send

Value	Description
false	No fault
true	Send fault
off-line	Send offline fault (1G)
ane	Send ANE fault (1G)

I.3.19. ramode: IPv6 route announce level

IPv6 route announcement mode and level

Table I.112. ramode: IPv6 route announce level

Value	Description
false	Do not announce
low	Announce as low priority
medium	Announce as medium priority

high	Announce as high priority
true	Announce as default (medium) priority

I.3.20. dhcpv6control: Control for RA and DHCPv6 bits

Table I.113. dhcpv6control: Control for RA and DHCPv6 bits

Value	Description
false	Don't set bit or answer on DHCPv6
true	Set bit but do not answer on DHCPv6
dhcpv6	Set bit and do answer on DHCPv6

I.3.21. bgpmode: BGP announcement mode

BGP mode defines the default advertisement mode for prefixes, based on well-known community tags

Table I.114. bgpmode: BGP announcement mode

Value	Description
false	Not included in BGP at all
no-advertise	Not included in BGP, not advertised at all
no-export	Not normally exported from local AS/confederation
local-as	Not exported from local AS
no-peer	Exported with no-peer community tag
true	Exported as normal with no special tags added

I.3.22. pppoe-mode: Type of PPPoE connection

Table I.115. pppoe-mode: Type of PPPoE connection

Value	Description
client	Normal PPPoE client connects to access controller
bras-l2tp	PPPoE server mode linked to L2TP operation

I.3.23. pdp-context-type: Type of IP connection

Table I.116. pdp-context-type: Type of IP connection

Value	Description
ip	IPv4 only
ip6	IPv6 only
ip4ip6	IPv4/IPv6 dial stack
ppp	End to end PPP

I.3.24. peertype: BGP peer type

Peer type controls many of the defaults for a peer setting. It allows typical settings to be defined with one attribute that reflects the type of peer.

Table I.117. peertype: BGP peer type

Value	Description
normal	Normal BGP operation
transit	EBGP Mark received as no-export
peer	EBGP Mark received as no-export, only accept peer AS
customer	EBGP Allow export as if confederate, only accept peer AS
internal	IBGP allowing own AS
reflector	IBGP allowing own AS and working in route reflector mode
confederate	EBGP confederate
ixp	Internet exchange point peer on route server

I.3.25. ipsec-type: IPsec encapsulation type

Table I.118. ipsec-type: IPsec encapsulation type

Value	Description
AH	Authentication Header
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload

I.3.26. ipsec-mode: IPsec encapsulation mode

Table I.119. ipsec-mode: IPsec encapsulation mode

Value	Description
tunnel	IPsec tunnel
transport	IPsec transport

I.3.27. ipsec-auth-algorithm: IPsec authentication algorithm

Table I.120. ipsec-auth-algorithm: IPsec authentication algorithm

Value	Description
null	No authentication
HMAC-MD5	HMAC-MD5-96 (RFC 2403)
HMAC-SHA1	HMAC-SHA1-96 (RFC 2404)
AES-XCBC	AES-XCBC-MAC-96 (RFC 3566)

I.3.28. ipsec-crypt-algorithm: IPsec encryption algorithm

Table I.121. ipsec-crypt-algorithm: IPsec encryption algorithm

Value	Description
-------	-------------

null	No encryption (RFC 2410)
3DES-CBC	3DES-CBC (RFC 2451)
blowfish	Blowfish CBC (RFC 2451)
AES-CBC	AES-CBC (Rijndael) (RFC 3602)

I.3.29. firewall-action: Firewall action

Table I.122. firewall-action: Firewall action

Value	Description
continue	Continue rule-set checking
accept	Allow but no more rule-set checking
reject	End all rule checking now and set to send ICMP reject
drop	End all rule checking now and set to drop
ignore	End all rule checking and ignore (drop) just this packet, not making a session

I.3.30. voip-format: Number presentation format

Table I.123. voip-format: Number presentation format

Value	Description
international	Full international number
int-no-plus	International without leading plus
national	With nat/int prefix
local	Internal extension number/local number
block	Do not use for calls

I.3.31. uknumberformat: Number formatting option

Table I.124. uknumberformat: Number formatting option

Value	Description
false	Don't format numbers for display
true	Format numbers for display with spacing
replace-zero	Format numbers for display with spacing and replacing zeros - may look clearer on some CLI devices

I.3.32. recordoption: Recording option

Table I.125. recordoption: Recording option

Value	Description
false	Don't automatically record calls
in-only	Automatically record incoming calls
out-only	Automatically record outgoing calls
true	Automatically record all calls

I.3.33. ring-group-order: Order of ring

Table I.126. ring-group-order: Order of ring

Value	Description
strict	Order in config
random	Random order
cyclic	Cycling from last call
oldest	Oldest used phone first

I.3.34. ring-group-type: Type of ring when one call in queue

Table I.127. ring-group-type: Type of ring when one call in queue

Value	Description
all	All phones
cascade	Increasing number of phones
sequence	One phone at a time

I.4. Basic types

Table I.128. Basic data types

Type	Description
string	text string
hexBinary	hex coded binary data
integer	integer (-2147483648-2147483647)
positiveInteger	positive integer (1-4294967295)
unsignedInt	unsigned integer (0-4294967295)
unsignedShort	unsigned short integer (0-65535)
byte	byte integer (-128-127)
unsignedByte	unsigned byte integer (0-255)
boolean	Boolean
dateTime	YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS date/time
time	HH:MM:SS time
void	Internal use
IPAddr	IP address
IPNameAddr	IP address or name
IP4Addr	IPv4 address
IP6Addr	IPv6 address
IPPrefix	IP address / bitlen
IPRange	IP address / bitlen or range
IPNameRange	IP address / bitlen or range or name

IP4Range	IPv4 address / bitlen or range
IP4Prefix	IPv4 address / bitlen
IP6Prefix	IPv6 address / bitlen
IPSubnet	IP address / bitlen
IPFilter	Route filter
Password	Password
Community	xxx:xxx community
PortRange	xxx-xxx port range
Colour	#rgb #rrggbb #rgba #rrggbbaa colour
Secret	Secret/passphrase
duration	Period [[HH:]MM:]SS
username	Login name (<i>string</i>)
ipnamerangelist	List of IPranges or ip groups (<i>IPNameRange</i>)
routetable	Route table number (0-99) (<i>unsignedByte</i>)
ipnamelist	List of IP addresses or domain names (<i>IPNameAddr</i>)
datenum	Day number in month (1-31) (<i>unsignedByte</i>)
stringlist	List of strings (<i>string</i>)
iplist	List of IP addresses (<i>IPAddr</i>)
subnetlist	List of subnets (<i>IPSubnet</i>)
ra-max	Route announcement max interval (seconds) (4-1800) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
ra-min	Route announcement min interval (seconds) (3-1350) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
ip6list	List of IPv6 addresses (<i>IP6Addr</i>)
mtu	Max transmission unit (576-1600) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
vlan	VLAN ID (0=untagged) (0-4095) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
ip4rangelist	List of IP4ranges (<i>IP4Range</i>)
macprefixlist	List of strings (<i>macprefix</i>)
macprefix	MAC prefix (<i>hexBinary</i>)
ip4list	List of IPv4 addresses (<i>IP4Addr</i>)
graphname	Graph name (<i>string</i>)
cug	CUG ID (1-32767) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
prefixlist	List of IP Prefixes (<i>IPPrefix</i>)
aslist	List of AS numbers (<i>unsignedIntList</i>)
unsignedIntList	List of integers (<i>unsignedInt</i>)
communitylist	List of BGP communities (<i>Community</i>)
filterlist	List of IP Prefix filters (<i>IPFilter</i>)
bgp-prefix-limit	Maximum prefixes accepted on BGP session (1-10000) (<i>unsignedInt</i>)
fb105-reorder-timeout	Maximum time to queue out of order packet (ms) (10-5000) (<i>unsignedInt</i>)
fb105-reorder-maxq	Maximum size of out of order packet queue (1-100) (<i>unsignedInt</i>)
ipsec-spi	Security Parameters Index sent in ipsec headers (256-4294967295) (<i>unsignedInt</i>)
ping-size	Data payload size to be sent in ping packet (0-1472) (<i>unsignedInt</i>)

Configuration Objects

iprangelist	List of IPranges (<i>IPRange</i>)
portlist	List of protocol port ranges (<i>PortRange</i>)
protolist	List of IP protocols (<i>unsignedByte</i>)
userlist	List of user names (<i>username</i>)
prefix4list	List of IPv4 Prefixes (<i>IP4Prefix</i>)
routetableset	Set of routetables (<i>routetable</i>)
vlan-nz	VLAN ID (1-4095) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
dates	Set of dates (<i>datenum</i>)
tun-id	Local tunnel ID (1-20) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)
ses-id	Local session ID (1-250) (<i>unsignedShort</i>)

Index

Symbols

3G

USB dongle configuration, 66

A

Attributes

value syntax

IP address groups, 20

B

BGP

overview, 90

Boot process, 27

Breadcrumbs, 13

C

Configuration

backing up and restoring, 16

categories (user interface), 13

methods, 11

overview, 10

overview of using XML, 16

transferring using HTTP client, 20

using web user interface, 11

Configuration Basic data types , 182

Configuration Data types , 173

Configuration Field definitions , 129

D

DHCP

configuring server, 36

configuring subnet with DHCP client, 36

Diagnostics

Access check, 72

Firewalling check, 71

Packet dumping, 72

DNS

configuring resolver(s) to use, 69

E

Ethernet Ports

configuring LED indication modes, 38

configuring speed and/or duplex modes, 38

defining port groups, 34

relationship with interfaces, 33

sequenced flashing of LEDs, 27

Event logging

external logging, 29

overview, 28

viewing logs, 31

F

Firewall

definition of, 41

Firewalling

recommended method, 46

G

Graphs, 57

H

Hostname

setting, 23

HTTP service

configuration, 68

I

Interfaces

defining, 35

Ethernet, 33

logical to physical associations, 33

relationship with physical ports, 33

IP Address Groups, 20

IPsec

overview, 92

L

L2TP

overview, 91

LEDs

Power LED - status indications, 27

Log targets, 28

Logging (see Event logging)

N

NAT

requesting via session-rule, 48

Navigation buttons

in user interface, 15

NTP (Network Time Protocol)

configuring time servers to use, 69

O

Object Hierarchy

overview, 10

Object Model

definition of, 10

formal definition, 11

P

Packet dumping, 72

Example using curl and tcpdump, 75

PPPoE

configuring, 60

overview, 59

Profiles

- defining, 54
- overview, 54
- viewing current state, 54

R

RADIUS

- configuring service, 70

Route

- definition of, 50

Router

- definition of, 41

Routing

- route targets, 51

Rule-Sets

- defining, 46

S

Session Rules

- defining, 46
- overview, 42
- processing flow, 43
- processing flow-chart, 44

Session Table, 41

Session Tracking

- changes to session traffic, 48
- configuring time-outs, 49
- overview, 41
- time-outs, 42

Shapers, 57

SNMP

- configuring service, 70

Software

- identifying current version, 25

Software upgrades

- breakpoint releases, 24
- controlling auto-upgrade behaviour, 26
- overview, 24
- software release types, 24

System name (see Hostname)

System services

- checking access to, 72
- configuring, 67
- definition of, 67
- list of, 67

T

Telnet service

- configuration, 68

Time-out

- login sessions, 22

Traffic shaping

- overview, 57

Tunnels

- bonding (FB105), 63
- FB105, 62
- viewing status (FB105), 63

U

USB

- "socket" identification value, 66
- 3G dongle configuration, 66
- overview, 66
- subsystem, configuration, 66

User Interface

- customising layout, 12
- general layout, 12
- navigation, 15
- overview, 11

Users

- creating / configuring, 21
- login level, 22
- restricting logins by IP address, 22

V

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), 76

- virtual router, definition of, 76
- VRRP versions, 77

VLANs

- introduction to, 103

VoIP

- basics, 79
- CDR, 87
- NAT, 80
- overview, 79
- registration, 79
- technical, 88

X

XML

- introduction to, 16

- XML Schema Document (XSD) file, 11